## **HISTORY PAPER 2**

## REVISION KIT

Mr Isaboke

0705525657

# KCSE HISTORY PAPER 2 REVISION KIT

### TOPIC 1 INTRODUCTION TO HISTORY & GOVERNMENT

Covernment Manne a success of manner

of law and order.

**Government:** Means a group of people within a state / Society given authority to exercise power over that state / Society.

#### Sources of information on pre-history

- 1. Oral traditions.
- 2. Anthropology.
- Artifacts / Fossils / Archaeology / Palaeontology.
- 4. Language of the people.
- 5. Genetics.

### Types of fossils found in archaeological sites.

- 1. Baskets.
- 2. Carbonized seeds.
- 3. Garments (clothes)
- 4. Charcoal
- 5. Bones
- 6. Remains of animals
- 7. Remains of plants they lived on.

**History** means the study of man's past important events.

#### Branches of History-

*Economic*, which deals with means of livelihood of man like hunting, growing of crops and trading.

- *-Social,* which deals with traditions, values and cultural practices of man like religion, and rites of passage.
- -Political, which deals with control system in the society like system of government and maintenance

#### **Characteristics of Government.**

- 1. Every government has rules.
- 2. Legitimacy from the subjects.
- 3. Sovereignty.
- 4. Jurisdiction.
- 5. Leadership
- 6. Law Enforcement.

#### Arms / Branches of government-

Executive, Judiciary & legislative / parliament / national assembly.

#### **TYPES / FORMS OF GOVERNMENT**

#### 1. Democratic

This is based on the will of the people. Elections are free and fair.

#### 2. Aristocratic

A group of people from the **highest social class** rule over the society. King or queen is the head of government.

- **3. Monarchical-** The ruler is the queen or king.
- a) **Absolute-** This is where there is unrestricted power of the head of state.
- b) *Constitutional* Parliament is supreme but the monarch (king / Queen) is retained.

#### 4. Dictatorial

The ruler has total power over his subjects. He makes the law and exercises it.

#### Importance of studying History

- The study of History enables the learner to know the origin of mankind, and his progress and development.
- 2. It enables the learner to appreciate the achievements and learn from the failures of mankind.
- 3. It enables the learner to understand how human beings depend and relate to each other.
- 4. It also enables us to understand our culture and also the other people's.
- 5. It inspires patriotism and nationalism.
- 6. It enables the learner to know the political, Social & economic organization / development of our societies.
- 7. It enables us to increase knowledge / Gain more knowledge.
- 8. It gives time & space to past / historical events
- 9. It enhances the utilization of historical records of events such as famine, and tries to avoid repeat of the same.
- 10. It enhances the development of our critical thinking / mind.
- 11. It provide intellectual fulfillment to the learner.
- 12. It influences career choices.

#### How study of history inspires patriotism

- It enables the learner to be a responsible citizen.
- 2. It helps one to develop positive values.
- 3. It enables the learners to acquire a positive attitude towards their country.
- It enables one to become loyal to his / her country.

#### Importance of studying government.

- It helps us to understand how laws are made and enforced.
- 2. It enables us to learn how development

- programmes are made and implemented.
- 3. It enables us to learn how government raises and spends revenue.
- 4. It enables us to learn the functions of the various organs of government e.g. Legislature, Judiciary & executive
- 5. It makes us appreciate and understand the need for a government.
- It helps us to appreciate the constitution & the process of making & reviewing laws.
- We are able to know our roles as citizens and the roles of our leaders.
- 8. It helps us understand our rights, responsibilities and limitation within which we need to operate.
- 9. It influences career choices.

### SOURCE OF INFORMATION ON HISTORY & GOVERNMENT

These are Oral traditions, Anthropology, Archaeology / Palaeontology, Genetics, Resource person, Linguistics, Electronics, Written.

They are however grouped / classified in **three main** sources: unwritten, written & electronics

#### **Unwritten sources**

These are the sources with no written records or documentation.

#### 1. Oral traditions

This is the passing over historical information by word of mouth from one generation to another.

It is very vital among the illiterate. This includes Stories / folktales /myths / Legends, proverbs, songs, poems, riddles, tongue twisters, etc.

#### Limitations/disadvantages/demerits

- Information may be exaggerated / distorted.
- 2. Some facts may be forgotten, hence omitted as time is dynamic and changes may occur.
- 3. Some information may be deliberately concealed.
- 4. Some information may not give dates and chronology of events.
- 5. It is expensive.
- 6. It is time consuming.
- It may emphasize on dominant groups only / May be biased on a few groups of people.
- 8. It may be false.
- 9. The information depends on questionnaire.

#### Merits / advantages

- 1. It is used in the absence of the written.
- 2. It complements other sources.
- 3. It is captivating especially if it is narrated by a participant.
- 4. It is a form of entertainment.
- 5. Even the illiterate can benefit.

#### 2. Linguistics

This is the scientific study of languages. Languages change with time. People who speak a common language may be assumed to have a common origin in the past.

#### Advantages / Merits

- Facts can be obtained about movement of people and their relations.
- 2. It helps us to understand combinations better.
- 3. It is a medium of communication.
- 4. It helps in the dating of the migration of people.

- 5. It enables the researcher to gather information from various sources.
- 6. It can help historians to discover links between different people which were not known before.

#### Disadvantages / Demerits / Limitations

- 1. Learning a language takes long.
- 2. Borrowing of words from one language to another has interfered / corrupted the parent language.
- 3. Inaccurate information may be passed and hence difficult to understand.
- 4. There is a possibility of omitting some words when translating.
- Some words may be difficult to understand.
- Some languages have become old and irrelevant / archaic, hence difficult to translate.
- 7. Different languages may have similar words for different meanings.

#### 3. Anthropology

This is the study of human beings, their origin, physical attribute, social activities and institutions e.g. music, religious practices etc.

It gives a deeper understanding of a people's culture.

#### Limitation / disadvantages / demerits

- It is expensive to move and live in a foreign region / area.
- 2. It is time consuming as it takes time to learn from strangers.
- 3. It is difficult for the researcher to adapt to the new environment of the people in question.
- 4. The researcher may miss important details since the people under study may behave differently as they are

- observed in their own culture.
- 5. It is not reliable on its own; it has to be complimented by other sources.

#### Advantages / merits

- By living among the people, the research may be able to understand, discover and explain the structures of society & their culture.
- 2. It helps history to determine the cultural past of the people.
- 3. It gives a deeper understanding of a particular aspect of a people's culture.

#### 4. Genetics / Botany / Zoology / Biology

This involves the study of hereditary & variations of inherited characteristics.

#### Limitations/ disadvantages/demerits

- 1. It is time consuming
- 2. It is not accurate especially in dates.
- It may not be reliable as people look alike.

#### Merits / Advantages

- 1. It is easily available
- 2. There are no skills needed

#### 5. Archaeology & Palaeontology

This involves the study of man's past through scientific analysis of material remains of his culture e.g. pottery, buildings, sculpture etc.

All these are referred to as artifacts / fossils. Fossils are remnants of man while artifacts are remnants of man's tools. Some of the early archaeologists in E. Africa include Dr Louis Leaky, Mary Leaky,

Richard Leaky, Jonathan Leaky, Meave Richard Leaky, Dr M. Posnansky, Dr H. N. N. Chittick, Dr D. W. Philipson

#### Advantages / merits (Archaeology)

- It gives detailed information of varied nature.
- 2. It gives a sense of time as artifacts can be dated.
- 3. It complements others sources, this ensures authenticity of the information.
- 4. It provides information on culture of early people.
- 5. It gives a picture on human activities in the past.

#### Limitation / disadvantages / demerits

- It is expensive to organize visits to museums and archaeological sites for information.
- 2. It is difficult to locate sites, artifacts are buried.
- 3. It is time consuming.
- 4. Some artifacts & fossils are fragile and hence they can break during excavation or transportation.
- 5. It cannot be used to study recent history.
- It may not be accurate as it depends on conclusions (inferences) & reconstructions.
- The dating is not accurate as it can only be estimated.
- 8. There are very few archaeologists.
- 9. It is difficult to identify particular people by name, language, place of origin etc.
- It depends on other disciplines for analysis.

#### How archaeological sites are located.

 Archaeologists look for areas where tectonic forces (faulting) or erosion has

- taken place exposing surfaces which may give some clues.
- 2. When physical features, where by the areas' features may be different from the others around them, thus vision.
- 3. Historical research, especially when an area is mentioned in an oral narratives e.g. Babylon.
- 4. Long experience & skills may guide the archaeologist to locate a site.
- During cultivation & building construction ancient objects can be accidentally exposed.

#### Things archaeologists use to obtain history.

- 1. Remains of Weapons. 2. Remains of Tools.
- 3. Remains of Bones.
- 4. Remains of Plants 5. Remains of Artwork / painting. 6. Remains of Beads. 7. Remains of Coins 8.Remains of Garment. 9. Remains of Charcoal 10. Rock paintings. 11.

Carbonized seeds.12. Remains of dwellings. 13. Traditional crafts like pottery and beards.

#### 6. Geology

This is the study of the origin, structure & composition of the earth.

#### Written Sources.

- They include: books, journals, novels, plays, newspapers, magazines, diaries, annual reports.
- They are classified into three- Archives, manuscripts and printed / published sources.
- Archives are a collection of historical documents or records, which are accessible to the public after some time. This is therefore a place where government, public & other historical information is kept.
- ∍ Manuscript is an author's handwritten or

- typed text that has not been published.
- Published / printed are those that have been typed and officially released by the author for public use.
- There were two types of them; stone tablets & scrolls.
- Other written sources include Pictures and Parchments.

#### **Printed sources**

They include books, Charts / maps, Scrolls, paintings, clay labels, stone tablets, journals / periodicals, Newspapers / Magazines, Diaries / Biographies, / Official Government records, constitution, pictures.

#### Advantages of written sources

- 1. They can be stored for future reference.
- 2. They can reach all literate people.
- 3. They promote literacy.
- 4. They are less costly as compared to the others.
- 5. They are accurate as the information is preserved exactly as it was recorded.
- They can be translated into many other languages, which will enable many people of different languages all over the world to learn history.
- 7. They contain fewer biases.
- 8. They provide dates for events.

#### Disadvantages / limitations / demerits

- Some authors omit essential information for one reason or another, hence making it unreliable.
- 2. If the records are misplaced or destroyed, one may not get any information.
- 3. Some are not readily available for reference e.g. when controlled by the

government.

- It may be misunderstood or misinterpreted by reader for one reason or another.
- 5. Writers may be biased as they may write from their particular point of view.
- 6. It is only limited to the literate.
- 7. Some may not be readily available for reference.

#### **Electronic sources**

These are: microfilms, radio, Audio-visuals e.g. TV, films, Video, Databanks / Databases / Computers

These are large stores of organized information which can be accessed.

#### Advantages of electronics

- 1. It captures information as it happens at the scenes are recorded live.
- 2. They make the past come alive today.
- 3. They give facts about events on a topic.
- 4. The documents can be stored for future use
- 5. They can easily be accessible when need be.
- 6. They are faster.

#### **Limitations of electronic sources**

- 1. They may be biased
- 2. They may be inaccurate.
- 3. They may be too expensive.
- 4. They are unrealistic, thus contain exaggerated information.

**N/B**: the sources can also be summed up as primary (unwritten) secondary (written) and tertiary (electronic)

#### **Methods of Dating Fossils**

#### a) Geological periods

These are names of periods of past time.

#### b) Chemical

#### i. Radio-carbon 14 dating

This is by measuring the rate of decay of carbon 14 in fossils. Carbon 14 is found in carbon dioxide which is present in the atmosphere. Its absorption by plants and animals stops at death and instead, it starts to decay. This can then be used to estimate the date it existed

#### ii. Potassium Argon method.

This is used to date volcanic ash & minerals containing potassium. Potassium is emitted during volcanic eruptions. After it is deposited, it begins to decay into the gas organ.

#### c) Stratigraphy

This is the study and interpretation of the layers of rocks successively deposited at one place. Used in sediment areas.

#### d) Fission-track dating

It is used in Pleistocene samples, where uranium is present.

It is determined by observing the tracks made in them by the fission fragments of the uranium nuclei that they contain. This is from the time the object solidified.

#### e) Lexico -statistics dating

This is the statistical study of the vocabulary of language with the intention of determine their age & their historical links with other languages.

#### f) Statistical dating

Through a system of averaging, the length of a generation can be determined and dates estimated for events associated with certain generations..

from Britain-in 1859. This was a process of change in living organisms over a long period of time. He stated that all living things evolved over many years from Simple living cell to more complex plants & animals. Man belongs to the <a href="https://example.com/hominidae">hominidae</a> family while apes belong to the <a href="https://example.com/hominidae">pongidae</a> family.

#### Stages of evolution of early man.

- 1. Mutation
- 2. Natural selection
- 3. Isolation
- 4. Adaption

### Composition / features of Darwin's natural selection

- 1. All creatures are uniquely different based on hereditary factors.
- 2. From birth, few young organisms manage to develop to maturity.
- 3. Those who manage to mature and reproduce are those that are able to adapt to the existing environment.
- 4. Only the fittest could survive (survival of the fittest).
- Isolation & adaption is the final stage in evolution. This is due to the increase in number and hence such for basic needs. A species may be isolated before taking on a significantly different physical form.
- Small creatures gradually developed into bigger ones.
- ∍ Climatic changes took place.
- → He was secure on trees.
- → He fed on insects, birds & leaves
- Africa, especially Eastern was **cradle of mankind**.
- This is due to:
- The existence / Presence of many archaeological sites around L- Vitoria

#### **TOPIC2.EARLY MAN**

#### Origin of man

There are three (3) theories concerning the origin of man: creation (religious), traditional (mythical) and evolution / Scientific / Darwin's.

#### Creation / Religious

This is religious, and it is found in the religious books like the Quran for the Muslims, the Bible for the Christians and the Bhagvatgeeta for the Hindus. It emphasizes that man was created by God.

#### Mythical / traditional

This theory is found in the various communities around the world. The communities have different beliefs concerning the origin of man. It is based on their customs.

#### **Evolution Scientific theory**

This was put forward by Charles Darwin

- and R / Valley area.
- 2. The presence of savanna grasslands found in Kenya favored hunting as a means of survival by man e.g. forests.
- 3. Existence of permanent rivers which provided water for use by man.
- 4. Warm tropical climate which was ideal for man's existence.
- Geographically, Africa of which Kenya is part was centrally located, making it possible for the early man to spread to the other parts as the continents were drifting.
- This is evident in archaeological sites in Kenya e.g. Rusinga Island, Eliye springs, Kanapoi, Naiorokotome, Fort Ternan (near Kericho), Kariandusi (near Elementaita), Gambles cave, Olorgesailie, Koobi Fora (near L. Turkana), Hyrax Hill, Njoro river cave, Kanjera, Gedi, Lewa, Chesowanja etc.
- ∋ In <u>Tanzania</u> we have sites like Olduvai Gorge, Cheke, Eyasi, Ngorongoro, Isimila, Apis Rock, Kalambo, Kisese, Garusi, Ngaloba, Peninj, Kondoa, Engaruka and Iringa.
- In <u>Uganda</u> we have Nsongezi, Napak, Magosi, Paraa, Ten cents terrace, Ishanga, Mweya, Nyero, Nyabusora, Sango and Lolui
- ∋ In <u>Ethiopia</u> we have Omo river valley, Hadar, Afar & Bodo.

### Changes in early man / break off point between apes & man.

- 1. Man became upright / bipedal.
- 2. He became less hairy.
- 3. His skull's size became large.
- 4. The jaws & teeth become smaller.
- 5. The hands & arms became shorter.
- 6. The legs and toes became shorter.
- 7. He became taller.
- 8. He had a slender body.

#### 9. He had a bigger brain.

#### Differences between apes & pithecines.

- The early man had a bigger skull, hence bigger brain.
- 2. Man is upright / bipedal.
- 3. The early man had stronger jaws & teeth, as they were smaller in size.
- 4. The forearms became shorter and more suitable for an upright posture.
- 5. The thumb became stronger and more separate from the four fingers.
- 6. The leg & foot formation changed-feet & toes become shorter.
- 7. Man has a developed speech.
- 8. Man has less hair.

#### Stages of evolution from ape to man

#### **Pithecines**

#### 1. Aegyptopithecus (Egyptian Ape)

- It is believed to be the earliest ancestor of man.
- 2. It was discovered in the Fayum Depression in Egypt.
- 3. It had a stereoscopic vision / had deep eye sockets.
- 4. The hands / front legs enabled him to jump skillfully from one tree to another.
- 5. It was quadrupedal / walked on fours.
- 6. It had had 32 teeth.
- 7. It was small / weighed about 4kgs.

### 2. Dryopithecus Africanus / Proconsul / "Chief"

- It was found at Rusinga by Louis & Many Leaky in 1948
- 2. It had smooth forehead.
- 3. It had long teeth.
- 4. Some of his fossils were also found in East-Asia & Europe.

- 5. He ate meat & fruits.
- 6. He used fore limbs as arms.
- 7. He walked on fours.

#### 3. Kenyapithecus / Ramapithecus

- The fossils were found at Fort Ternan by Louis Leakey in 1961. This was the Kenyapithecus.
- 2. Other fossils were found at Siwalikis-in India and others in Europe. This was referred to as Ramapithecus.
- He had smaller canine teeth like those of man.
- 4. He had a big jaw.
- 5. He had bigger brain than earlier pithecines.
- 6. He was quadrupedal.
- 7. He weighed- 18-36kg.

## 4. Australopithecus / Southern Ape / Zinjanthropus / Nutcracker man

These were the earliest hominids closer to man.

He made Oldowan tools.

- 1. He was upright / bipedal.
- 2. He had smaller brain-450-500cc.
- 3. He had a large face.
- 4. The bodies were hairy.
- 5. He was short but strong.
- 6. He had low forehead with deep-set eyes.
- 7. He had large teeth & Jaws.
- 8. He had grinding molars.
- 9. The skull and jaw were much larger than modern man's.
- 10. The fossils were found at Taung in Botswana by Raymond Part in1924.
- 11. In E. Africa, it was found at Olduvai Gorge by Mary leaky in 1959.
- 12. It was nick- named nut cracker
- 13. It was also found at Omo River valley in Ethiopia, Laetoli and near L. Natron in

Tanzania and also near Lakes Turkana & Baringo in Kenya.

#### Types of Australopithecus

#### 1. Australopithecus Anamensis

- This is the latest at Kanapoi & Allia Bay at the L Turkana by Dr Meave Leaky, Dr AllanWalker & 'Hominid Gang' ( Kimeu Kamoya, Wambua Mangao, Nzube Mutiwa & Samuel Ngui)
- Other well-known archaeologists in East Africa include Dr Louis Leaky, Mary Leaky, Jonathan Leaky, Meave Leaky, Richard Leaky, Allan Walker, Dr M. Pasnansky, Dr H. N. N. Chitick and Dr D. W. Philipson.

#### 2. Australopithecus Afarensis.

- The fossils were found at Afar in Ethiopiasmall & bipedal.
- ∋ Some of its fossils were also found at Laetoli & Tugen (Baringo).

#### 3. Australopithecus Africanus / Gracilis.

- → He was the smaller light & slander.
- He had a small brain.
- ⇒ He had large teeth, Jaws & skull.

#### 4. Australopithecus Robustus / Boisei

- This was the biggest and the most recent type.
- $\rightarrow$  He had a brain capacity of 500-800cc.
- He was about 5ft tall.
- → He was strong, tall and heavy.
- He weighed about 68kg.
- ∍ His teeth & jaw resembled modern man.

#### Hominids

#### A. Homo Habilis (man with ability)

- → The fossils were found at Olduvai Gorge in 1964 by Jonathan Leakey.
- ∋ It was also found at Omo river valley & Koobi Fora.
- → The structure of thumb had improved and he could handle tools.
- The shape of skull resembles modern man's.
- э He had small teeth and small jaw.
- → He was about five feet tall.
- He had a brain capacity of between 500 -800cc.

#### B. Homo Erectus (upright man)

- His fossil was found at Hadar & Olorgesaille.
- 2. He invented fire.
- 3. The fossils were also found at Niokotone River near L. Turkana, Morocco & S. Africa.
- 4. He made Acheulian tools e.g. hand axe, Spear heads, Cleavers and arrow heads.
- 5. He was upright.
- 6. He had protruding Jaws.
- 7. He was about 5 feet, 6 inches tall / 1.2 m.
- 8. He had a long skull.
- 9. He had developed a thumb / hand for grasping.
- 10. He had a bigger brain between 700-1250cc.
- 11. He had a more developed speech than the earlier creatures.

#### His distinct characteristics

- 1. He had a big brain capacity of about 700-1250cc / High thinking capacity
- 2. He walked upright / bipedal.
- 3. He had ability to grasp objects.
- 4. He had a more developed speech than the earlier creatures.

- 5. He had a long skull.
- 6. He had protruding jaws.
- 7. He was about 5ft, 6 inches tall.

### How he attempted to improve his way of life.

- 1. He improved stone tools by Levallois.
- 2. He invented fire and used it for cooking.
- 3. He settled in caves for security.
- 4. He made clothes from animal skins.
- 5. He developed language for effective communication.
- 6. He migrated to warmer areas / regions

#### C. Homo Sapiens (Thinking man)

- 1. He had a steep & well rounded forehead.
- 2. He had a big brain capacity -1000-1800cc.
- 3. He was about 5ft, 6 inches tall.
- 4. He was upright.
- 5. He had an advanced speech.
- His fossils were found at Eliye springs near Lake Turkana, Kanjera & Kanam in Kenya.
- 7. The fossils were also found at Bodo & Omo R.V in Ethiopia & Nyaloba in Tanzania.

#### Types sub-species of Homo sapiens

#### 1. Rhodesian man

 His fossils were found in Northern Rhodesia (modern Zambia)

#### 2. Neanderthal man

His fossils were found in Neander valleyGermany-1856

#### 3. Cro-Magnon man

- → He was taller than modern man, stronger and bushy eye-brows.
- He lived in W. Europe.

#### D. Homo sapiens sapiens

- 1. He evolved from the Homo sapiens.
- 2. He was more advanced than Homo sapiens.
- 3. He plans ahead, make accurate forecasts etc.
- They moved and settled in different regions and different environments. This then brought about the idea of races.
- 5. He made more complex weapons.
- 6. He made garments from skins using bones.
- 7. He built huts.

#### **Summary**

- 1. Aegyptopithecus / Egyptian Ape.
- Dryopithecus / Africanus / Proconsul / Woodland Man / "Chief"
- 3. Kenyapithecus / Ramapithecus / Kenyan Ape / Woodland Man / Asian Ape
- 4. Australopithecus / Southern Ape / Man Ape / Zinjanthropus / Nut Cracker Man
- 5. Homo Habilis / Handy Man / Practical Man
- 6. Homo Erectus / Upright Man
- 7. Homo sapiens / Thinking Man
- 8. Homo sapiens Sapiens / Modern Man.

### CULTURAL & ECONOMIC PRACTICE OF THE EARLY MAN

- This time is referred to as `STONE AGE period.' This is so because man used stone to make tools.
- It is also called "Paleolithic" which means "Old Stone Age" in Greek.
- It is divided into THREE main stages, namely.
  - Old stone Age (lower Paleolithic)
     -450,000-50,000 years ago

- 2) Middle Stone Age (mid Paleolithic)
  - 50,000 15,000 years
  - Also called Mesolithic period.
- New/late stone Age (upper Paleolithic)
  - 15,000-1,500 years
  - Also called Neolithic period.

### Old Stone Age / Lower Paleolithic (450,000-50,000 years).

- It is connected to Homo habilis.
- He made Oldowan tools in the 1<sup>st</sup> half of the period e.g. Choppers, Pebbles, Flakes.
  - These tools were found in places like Olduvai Gorge, Koobi Fora, Omo River Valley, Kafu valley, Shaba province, Algeria, Morocco and Tunisia.
- 2. Acheulian / Pebble tools were made in the 2<sup>nd</sup> half e.g. choppers, hand axe, cleavers, scrapers, arrow heads, spear heads etc.
- 3. He communicated using gestures and whistling.
- 4. He used stone tools for many purposes like skinning animals.
- 5. He lived in small groups to assist each other.
- 6. He ate raw food as fire had not been invented.
- 7. He obtained food through hunting and gathering.
- 8. They used simple hunting methods like traps and throwing stones as they chased after the animal.
- 9. He had no clothes, but the hairy bodies kept them warm.
- 10. They had no specific / permanent dwelling places, and therefore climbed on trees and hide in caves for protection from predators.

11. He lived near lakes and rivers.

Oldowan tools were also found at Kafu valley, Shaba province, Algeria, Morocco and Tunisia.

#### Uses of stone tools during this stage

- 1. It was used skinning animals after hunting.
- 2. It was used for digging up roots.
- 3. It was used for cutting meat
- 4. It was used for sharpening bone / wood
- 5. It was used for softening or scraping animal skins.
- 6. It was used for protection / defense

#### Middle Stone Age. (50,000-15,000 years)

- This period was connected to the Homo erectus.
- Man made improved tools named Sangoan / Lupemban by La vallois method / Mousterian e.g. scrapers, chisel picks, dagger picks knives, spear points, choppers, daggers etc.
- 2. Microlithic industry also developed.
- 3. Man continued with hunting and gathering but in an improved way.
- 4. They lived in camps for protection purposes.
- 5. They lived in caves.
- 6. They fished on lakes and rivers.
- 7. They used simple hunting methods of chasing the animals and throwing stones at them as well as using traps.
- 8. They started wearing animal skins as clothing.
- 9. They started painting themselves using red ochre and oil.
- 10. Distinct language developed to enhance communication.
- 11. Rock painting was done on cave walls where they drew pictures of the animals

they

hunted / Rock art.

- 12. They decorated themselves with necklaces made from seeds and animal bones.
- Fire was made during this period and it was used for different purposes like cooking food.

#### Effects of discovery of fire

- 1. It provided warmth during cold times.
- 2. It provided light during darkness.
- 3. It was used to extract poison from plants used for hunting.
- 4. Man used fire to soften food before eating. This was done by either cooking or roasting.
- 5. It was used to harden pottery.
- 6. Man used the fire for hunting.
- 7. Fire was also used the harden tips of weapons for efficiency.
- 8. It was used as a means of communication.
- 9. It was also used to preserve food.
- Fire was used by man for security against wild animals as it was kept burning at the

entrance of the caves and below the trees during the nights.

11. It was used to clear bushes to facilitate settlement.

During the Middle Stone Age, man continued hunting in groups, but used better methods, which enable him to kill even larger animals.

- Man lived near Lakes and rivers.
- 2. He made simple stone tools.
- 3. Man had no specific dwelling places.
- 4. He hide himself from predators by climbing on trees and caves.
- 5. He developed a language by gestures

- and whistling.
- 6. He made ornaments. Painted himself with red clay and oil.
- 7. Rock painting came in to existence.
- 8. He lived in small groups for security, sharing of resources, companionship, and assisting one another.
- 9. He wore animal skins.
- 10. He hunted and gathered.

# NEW / LATE STONE AGE / UPPER PALAEOLITHIC / NEOLITHIC PERIOD –(15,000-1,500 years)

- ∍ This is connected to the homo sapiens
- Man made tools with skill and precision known as microlithic tools e.g. arrow heads, sickles, Spears, bows, arrows, slings, harpoons, knives, saws and daggers.
- Man also made shelters / cave / small huts using branches, grass & mud to protect himself from hash weather / wild animals.
- 3. Man also domesticated animals & plants to ensure regular food supply.
- 4. He had a more developed speech which made communication easier.
- 5. Government developed with customs becoming laws to improve his social life.
- 6. H. Sapiens developed religious as evidence by the practice of burying the dead with their possessions.
- He had time to engage in specialized simple art and craft work / pottery / weaving.
- 8. Man lived a settled life where they established villages.
- 9. Man made clothing using tree barks and animal skins.
- 10. They decorated their bodies with red ochre / wore ornaments.
- 11. He decorated walls of their shelters / huts with animal paintings / animal

scenes.

#### **Others**

- He also continued improving on hunting & gathering.
- 2. Rock painting became more common, indicating initial stages of writing.
- 3. Fishing was done along rivers and lakes.
- 4. He started some form of trade as the exchanged items with others.

### Characteristics of tools made by man during this stage.

- 1. They were small in size.
- 2. They were hafted / fixed with handles.
- 3. They were composite / made of more than one material.
- 4. They were more efficient / sharper.
- 5. They were specialized.
- 6. They were lighter.

### How the upright posture improved the early man's way of life.

- He was able to move/walk/run faster with long strides.
- 2. Man could use the hands to carry out farming activities.
- 3. Man could use the hands to grasp items conveniently.
- Man could spot/sight wild fruits which he used to hunt/gather from far distance.
- Man could see the impending danger from a distance and take appropriate measures.
- Man used hands to make tools/weapons which were used for different purposes.
- 7. Man used the hand to defend/attack the enemies.
- 8. Man used the hands to perform / carry out domestic chores / carrying young

ones.

9. Man used the hands to reach for fruits higher above.

#### **Hunting methods**.

- 1. Chasing after the animals and throwing stones at them.
- 2. Using other traps / snares.
- 3. Digging pits and driving the animal towards it.
- 4. Chasing the animals towards cliffs where they fall and even break their legs.
- 5. Chasing the animal towards swampy areas.

#### **Others**

- 1. Using fire, surrounding the hiding point of the animal with fire.
- 2. Waiting for them at their watering points. 5. Cutting / chopping.
- 3. Use of other animals like the dog.

#### How early man obtained food.

- 1. Hunting
- 2. Gathering
- 3. Growing crops
- 4. Livestock keeping / Rearing
- 5. Fishing

#### Disadvantages of hunting by the early man.

- 1. It was difficult to locate or spot prey.
- 2. Animals were dangerous to hunt.
- 3. It required many people.
- 4. Hunting was tiresome.
- 5. Hunting was time consuming.
- 6. Animals ran faster than man.
- 7. It was unreliable.

#### Disadvantages of hunting in groups by the early man.

- 1. It encouraged laziness among others.
- 2. Conflict may arise over sharing of the

loot.

3. There would be inadequate prey for everyone.

#### Types of dwellings used by the early man during the Stone Age period.

- Rock shelters.
- 2. Tree trunks.
- 3. On trees.
- 4. Caves
- In forests.

#### Uses of stone tools by the Early Man in this stage.

- 1. Protection against enemies / weapons
- 2. Digging roots
- 3. Constructing shelters / caves.
- 4. Skinning / scraping / peeling
- 6. Making containers.
- 7. Sewing.
- 8. Sharpening.
- 9. Making other tools.

#### Aspects of life which have their origin in the Late Stone Age.

- 1. Growing of crops and keeping of animals / Agriculture.
- 2. Establishment of permanent settlements.
- 3. Making microlithic stone tools e.g. spear.
- 4. Crafting e.g. Pottery and basketry.
- 5. Beginning of government
- 6. Religion

#### Characteristics that distinguish man from primates.

- 1. Upright posture.
- 2. Man is a social being.
- 3. Man is a religious being.
- 4. Developed speech / language.
- 5. High brain capacity / ability to think.

#### 6. Man is less hairy

### Benefits of settling in villages during the Late stone Age.

- 1. For security reasons against enemies.
- 2. It enhanced teamwork / working together.
- 3. It ensured man of permanent dwelling, thereby reducing movement.
- 4. Man began growing crops ensuring regular food supply.
- 5. Man was able to keep livestock which provided animal products, thus reducing his hunting activities.
- 6. It promoted interaction, thus sharing of ideas and resources.
- 7. People were able to exchange goods and services, hence getting what they did not have.
- 8. It enabled them to build better shelters, thereby protecting themselves from harsh weather conditions.

### Reasons why the early man lived in groups during the Stone Age.

- 1. For companionship.
- 2. For security.
- 3. To help one another.
- 4. To share resources.

### Why the early man hunted in groups during the Stone Age period.

- Wild animals are dangerous/could kill people.
- 2. They could surround the animal.
- 3. Spotting/locating the animal was easier.
- 4. Less time was used to catch the animal/less tiresome.
- 5. To give moral encouragement/team spirit.
- 6. They could catch more animals.

### TOPIC3 DEVELOPMENT OF AGRICULTURE.

## Factors that favored the development of early agriculture (domestication of crops and animals)

- Increased human population which could no longer be sustained by the hunting & gathering source of food.
- Climatic changes which made animals & plant reliability unpredictable as it was sometimes affected/ Migration of animals made man to seek an alternative source / Reduction in animal population.
- 3. Overhunting depleted stocks of animals on which human beings relied for food.
- Sometimes, calamities like bush fires destroyed vegetation, which was a threat to plants & animals.
- 5. Some crops and animals had economic value.
- Hunting & gathering had become more tiresome as people had to wander long distance.
- 7. Some animals were domesticated to provide security e.g. the dog.
- 8. As human population increased, animal population did the same, and this in turn brought about stiff competition for food with humans.
- Realization that some animals were social e.g. cat
- 10. Presence of indigenous crops.
- Development of improved tools which enabled effective cultivation of land for crops.
- Leading a sedentary / permanent / settled life.

#### Reasons why the early man domesticated

### animals and crops during the neo-lithic period.

- 1. Due increase in human population, hence need for more food.
- 2. There was **competition** for food between animals and human beings.
- 3. **Overhunting depleted** stocks of animals on which human beings relied for food.
- 4. Hunting and gathering had become tiresome / insecure
- 5. Calamities such as **bushfires / floods** destroyed vegetation / drove away animals.
- 6. Some crops and animals had **economic** value.
- 7. Animals were domesticated to provide **security.**
- 8. There was a **change in climate** which caused aridity / **Weather sometimes hindered** gathering & hunting.

#### Theories about origin of agriculture.

### 1. Centrifugal theory / One area theory / Diffusion

This holds that agriculture began in one area and then spread to other places.

#### 2. Independent theory.

This one holds that agriculture developed independently in different parts of the world.

Some of these places included **South West Asia** e.g. Iraq / Persia, Iran / Mesopotamia, Syria, Turkey, Lebanon.

**Asia** e.g. Ganges valley, HuangHo / Yellow river, Thailand, Malaysia and Indonesia.

**Tropical America** e.g. Southern America, Central America, Mexico.

Africa e.g. Nile valley, Algeria, W. Africa, Kenya, Tanzania, Ethiopia. Some of the early centers of Agrarian system are: Yellow River, Valleys of Rivers Tigris and Euphrates, Nile valley, Danube river in Europe, Ganges Valley, Indus valley and Tropical America.

#### How early agriculture spread in Africa.

- 1. Through trade
- 2. Through migration and settlement.
- 3. Through intermarriage.
- 4. Through wars.

### Methods used to produce crops & animals before the agrarian revolution.

- Digging sticks
- 2. Irrigation.
- 3. Fallowing
- 4. Nomadism.
- 5. Small gardens.
- 6. Open field system.

#### Benefits of domestic animals

- Provided regular food supply in form of meat and milk.
- 2. Animal skin was used for clothing and bedding.
- Hooves and horns were used as containers and drinking vessels. The horn was also used for communication.
- Bones were also used for making a variety of products e.g. ornaments, needles, weapons etc.
- 5. Some of them like the camel were used for transport purpose, enabling people to travel long distances with heavy load.
- 6. Others like the oxen were used in sloughing, thus increased crop yields.
- 7. Protection from wild animals e.g. dog.
- 8. Some produced manure which greatly

- improved agriculture.
- 9. Some could be used for hunting other wild animals like the dog.
- 10. Animals could be used as a source of wealth.
- 11. Could be used as sacrifices during rituals.

#### Effects of domestication of animals.

- 1. Food security.
- 2. Specialization.
- 3. Labour productivity increased.
- 4. Development & utilization of skills.
- 5. Reduced chances of famine occurring.
- 6. Population grew.
- 7. Food plants underwent genetic changes.
- 8. Human settlements grew, hence development of urban centers.
- 9. Increase in scientific knowledge.
- 10. Development of irrigation (better)
- 11. Increase in trade & wealth.

Dogs	Dailov
D093	- Bailey
Yams	- Maize
Goats	- wheat
Sheep	- sorghum
Camel	- millet
Cattle	- Rice
	Yams Goats Sheep Camel

#### **EARLY AGRICULTURE IN MESOPOTAMIA** (Iran)

Mesopotamia means land between two rivers, and in this case the two rivers are **Euphrates and Tigris.** 

∋ Crops gown included: Barley, wheat, Grapes, Onions, Figs, Vines, Date Palm, Olives, Melons, Cucumbers etc

#### Factors that favored:

1. Availability of cheap slave labour to

- work in the farms.
- 2. Existence of transport systems like the wheel, canoes and animals.
- 3. Settlement of people in Mesopotamia from Iran plateau who had the knowledge of agriculture
- 4. Construction of dykes to control flooding which enabled them to continue with farming throughout the year.
- 5. High demand for food for the growing population.
- 6. Availability of water from the rivers Tigris and Euphrates and rains for irrigation.
- 7. Political stability enabled the people to continue with agriculture without interruption.
- 8. Availability of suitable soil which was deposited around the rivers during flooding.
- 9. Invention and use of farm tools like hoes and ploughs enabled easier farming.
- 10. Building of storage facilities / granaries.
- Earliest crops & animals to be domesticated. 11. Knowledge of irrigation like shadoof.
  - 12. The area was endowed with indigenous crops like wheat & animals like sheep.

#### Methods used by the Sumerians in Mesopotamia to reclaim land.

- 1. They constructed dykes along rivers to stop flooding.
- 2. They dug ditches to drain water from swamps.
- 3. They used irrigation on the land eg canals (bucket) and shadoof.

#### Effects / impacts of early agriculture in Mesopotamia.

- 1. It enabled the people to settle down and concentrate on farming.
- 2. Population increased, due to the increase in food production.
- 3. Food production increased, hence

- improved standards of living.
- 4. Urban centres develop eg Ur, Uruk, Babylon and Nippur.
- 5. Trade between communities emerged and increased, due to the production of surplus food.
- 6. Specialization in craft activities followed
- 7. Influenced the development of writing (cuneiform) & arithmetic to keep records.
- 8. The invention of the wheel followed to facilitate the transporting process during farming.
- 9. The construction of storage facilities.
- It led to the advancement of religion in Mesopotamia, by connecting their many gods

to agriculture in a way.

11. Government was strengthened with the compiling of codes of law.

#### **EARLY AGRICULTURE IN EGYPT**

⇒ It developed along R. Nile valley in Fayum depression.

#### Factors that favored.

- The Nile provided water for commercial use .e.g. Shadoof, Basin and Canal irrigation.
- 2. Some of the crops & animals were easily available as they already existed there.
- 3. Silt deposited along the Nile river banks made the soil fertile.
- 4. Development of farming tools like hoes and ploughs.
- 5. Development and use of storage facilities.
- 6. Support from the leaders like Menes / Stable governments under Pharaohs.
- 7. Invention and use of Shadoof and other forms of irrigation.

- 8. External influence from South West Asia where farming had already started.
- 9. Natural protection from the enemies.
- 10. Availability of cheap slave labour.
- 11. Egyptians had the knowledge of weather forecasting.

#### Effects of early agriculture in Egypt.

- 1. Production of more food.
- 2. The Egyptians started living a settled life.
- 3. Development of new administrative systems
- 4. Different social classes of people developed e.g. Soldiers, priests etc.
- 5. Trade intensified with surplus production.
- 6. Farmers engaged in other activities like pottery / Specialization.
- 7. Development of new religious beliefs.
- 8. Increase in population.
- More advanced tools were developed for farming.
- 10. Development of Architecture e.g. Pyramids.
- Development of Hieroglyphic writing, Calendar, Geometry & Arithmetic for counting

of seasons and recording agricultural production.

- 12. Improved standards of living.
- 13. Urban centres developed.
- 14. Enhanced transport with sailing along River Nile.

### Similarities between early agriculture in Egypt and Mesopotamia.

- In both it was practised along river valleys.
- 2. Farmers depended on flood water for farming.
- 3. Developed systems of irrigation.
- 4. Used farm implements made of stone, wood and later metal.

- Developed a system of storage and preservation of food.
- 6. Used both animal and human labour.
- 7. Planted indigenous crops.
- 8. Traded in farm produce.

### Reasons why early agriculture was done along rivers.

- Existence of fertile soils deposited by rivers.
- 2. Availability of water for irrigation.
- 3. Transport by use of rivers.

#### AGRARIAN REVOLUTION IN BRITAIN.

Discoveries / inventions made in Britain at this time included use of fertilizer, Crop rotation / Norfolk system, Intercropping, selective breeding, seed drill, iron hoe, iron plough, mechanical reaper, mechanical thresher, tractor, combine harvester, Royal agricultural society etc.

### Farming activities in Europe before Agrarian revolution.

- 1. Use of simple / primitive tools.
- 2. Broadcasting method of planting.
- 3. Land belonged to the Feudal Lords.
- 4. Land was unconsolidated.
- 5. Intercropping was practiced.
- 6. Mixed farming was practised.
- 7. Poor breeds of animals and crops were used.
  - 8. Heavily relied on human labour.
  - 9. Open field system / Strip farming
  - 12. Shifting cultivation / Fallowing of land.
- 13. Subsistence farming / Small scale farming.
  - 15. Common grazing.
- 16. No use of machines / use of animal and human labour.

#### Changes that took place.

- 1. Abolition of fallows.
- 2. New crops like potatoes were introduced.
- 3. Application of new methods of farming e.g. use of fertilizer
- 4. Planned intercropping.
- Application of scientific principles of farming e.g. selective breeding.
- 6. Private land ownership.
- 7. Better storage facilities were introduced.
- 8. Improved transport.
- 9. Land was consolidated and the people were forced to fence it.
- 10. Farms were fenced / Land enclosure.
- 11. Establishment of Royal Agricultural Society in 1838 which publicized the new ideas & techniques of farming.
- 12. Introduction of mechanization.

### Inventions that led to agrarian revolution in Britain.

- 1. The seed drill.
- 2. The horse drawn hoe.
- 3. Selective breeding of livestock.
- 4. Introduction.
- 5. Introduction of fertilizer.
- 6. Mechanical thresher.
- 7. Mechanical reaper/Combine harvester.

## FACTORS THAT FAVOURED THE DEVELOPMENT OF AGRARIAN REVOLUTION IN BRITAIN.

- 1. The invention of machines.
- 2. Discovery of fertilizers which led to high yields.
- Discovery of pesticides and fungicides which facilitated control of crop diseases.
- 4. Development of new breeds of crops as a result of research in agriculture.
- 5. Reclamation of wasteland which gave rise to more arable land.

- 6. The enclosure system pushed people out of the rural areas & created room for plantation agric.
- 7. Discovery of canning and refrigeration made it possible for farmers to produce perishable goods in large quantities.
- 8. Establishment of Royal Agricultural Society.
- 9. Demand for agricultural raw materials.
- 10. High demand for food by the high urban population.
- 11. Improvement in transport system e.g. railways.

### Effects/advantages of land Tenure system in Britain.

- It led to development of large scale farming, thus bringing more land under production.
- 2. It led to increased food production since more land was brought under use.
- 3. It led to increase in population.
- 4. Facilitated mechanization of agriculture e.g. used seed drill.
- It led to establishment of industrialization which provided employment for the displaced.
- 6. It enhanced control of spread of pests & diseases & led to the production of high quality produce.
- 7. It led to the appreciation of the value of land
- 8. It improved transport and transport of agricultural produce to the market.
- Invention of new methods of maintaining soil fertility e.g. use of manure.
- Establishment of organizations that disseminate information about new agricultural
  - inventions e.g. Royal Agricultural Society.
- 11. New methods of animal husbandry were practiced e.g. Selective breeding.

- 12. It facilitated the growth of trade.
- 13. It led to private land ownership.

### Disadvantages of open field system in Britain before agrarian revolution

- Land was underutilized as it was left fallow.
- 2. The existence of strips prevented mechanization.
- 3. Cart tracks and foot paths that went through unfenced fields wasted land.
- 4. Long distances were covered before reaching scattered pieces of land, thus wasting time.
- 5. Spread of animal diseases due to common grazing.
- 6. Better farming practices like selective breeding could not be conducted.
- The farmers were forced to slaughter some of their animals during the season of autumn then preserve the meat by salting since they were not able to provide enough hay.

#### Effects of agrarian revolution in Britain.

- 1. Population expansion as there was regular food supply.
- 2. Improved farming methods led to increased food production.
- 3. Led to diversification of agriculture as new crops and breeding
  - methods in animals were introduced.
- Farmers abandoned small scale & subsistence farming to large scale which facilitated
  - mechanization.
- 5. Rural-urban migration by farmers who were rendered landless.
  - Agro-based industries developed.
- 7. Local and international trade intensified and boosted the economy.
  - 8. Improvement in the transport system.
  - 9. Enhanced research and scientific

innovations.

- 10. Other landless migrated to other countries like Canada.
- 11. The price of land went up.

### Methods of agriculture in Britain during agrarian revolution.

- 1. Mechanization of agriculture.
- 2. Use of pesticides.
- 3. Modern irrigation and land reclamation methods.
- 4. Selective breeding in livestock.
- 5. Crop zoning.
- Widespread research on animals and crops.
- 7. Use of fertilizers.
- 8. Crop rotation.
- 9. Land consolidation.
- 10. Large scale farming.
- 11. New and improved agricultural methods.

## Reasons for movement of European immigrants to America during agrarian revolution.

- 1. Religious differences.
- 2. Political differences.
- 3. The land enclosure system in Britain.
- 4. Labourers and craftsmen who were looking for better life.

## Factors that promoted plantation agriculture in Europe during the agrarian revolution.

- Invention of machines for extensive farming.
- 2. Abolition of fallows ensured no loss of production.
- 3. Discovery of fertilizers which led to high vields
- 4. Enclosure system pushed people out of the rural areas, thus creating room for plantation farming.

- 5. Discovery of pesticides which facilitated the control of diseases.
- 6. Migration of people to towns created room for plantation farming in the rural areas / Land consolidation.
- 7. Improvement of transport especially the railway system.
- 8. Development of new breeds of crops through research.
- 9. Discovery of refrigeration and canning.
- 10. Demand for agricultural and industrial raw materials.
- 11. High demand for food by the increasing urban population.

#### **AGRARIAN REVOLUTION IN USA**

Inventions / discoveries made here included use of fertilizer, crop rotation, steel plough, reapers factory, cotton picker, cotton gin, tractor, combine harvester, refrigeration, telegraph and telephone, electricity, oil etc

#### Factors that favored

- Introduction of land enclosure system in Britain forced the landless to migrate to N. America where they introduced new farming methods.
- Availability of fertile land for growing different types of crops like wheat, cotton and tobacco.
- More land was reclaimed and irrigated, thus more fertile land for farming made available.
- 4. Government recognition of individual ownership (Homestead Act 1860) encouraged settlers to farm.
- 5. Availability of suitable climate with enough and reliable rainfall.
- 6. Government support through granting of financial aid to farmers / Credit facility.
- 7. Introduction of slaves for labour ensured adequate supply of labour for farming.

- 8. Determination of European immigrants to succeed in Agriculture as there was no other source of livelihood.
- Increase in demand for agricultural raw materials by European Industrialists encouraged expansion of agriculture / Availability of foreign market.
- Mechanization of Agriculture encouraged agricultural production eg the invention of

Cotton Gin in 1793 by Ely Whitney led to increased cotton acreage and the steel plough

by John Deer in 1837.

11. Development of food preservation encouraged farmers to produce more e.g.

Refrigeration.

12. Development of good transport & communication network, enabled food to reach

farmers on time.

 Application of Scientific research to Agriculture e.g. Biotechnology and use of

fertilizer and pesticides.

- 14. Increase in population created demand for more food which led to the expansion of agriculture.
- 15. Discovery of controlling of animal diseases led to increase in production.
- 16. Teaching of agricultural economic and extension services.

### Characteristics of agrarian revolution in USA.

- Intensive mechanization / Use of machines.
- 2. Growing of hybrid seeds through research.
- 3. Large scale farming activities.
- 4. Intensive use of fertilizers.
- 5. Growing of several crops like maize,

beans etc / intercropping.

6. Crop zoning.

#### Crops grown

- 1. Tobacco
- 2. Cotton
- 3. Corn / Maize
- 4. Wheat

#### Effects of agrarian revolution in USA.

- Diversification of agriculture through introduction of new crops and animals.
- 2. New inventions in farm machinery and other new farming methods.
- 3. Population expansion.
- Many parts of America were opened up for farming and settlement / Mechanization enabled more land to be brought under cultivation / development of plantation agriculture.
- 5. Increased food production.
- 6. Expansion of agro-based industries.
- 7. Surplus food was given as humanitarian aid.
- 8. Increased local and international trade between USA and Western Europe.
- Improved transport and communication network.
- It led to enhancement of research and Scientific discoveries in the field of agriculture.
- 11. Mechanization released people to search for employment in towns.

### FOOD SITUATION IN AFRICA AND THE OTHER THIRD WORLD COUNTRIES

#### Causes of food shortage

1. Many parts of Africa experience little or

- no rain at all over several years, leading to crop failure and hence food shortage / natural hazards.
- 2. The rapid population growth has overtaken the food production rate resulting in food shortage.
- 3. Inadequate food storage facilities have contributed to food wastages as farmers cannot store food for a long time.
- 4. Poor state of roads in many countries hinders transportation of food from areas of surplus to areas of deficit.
- Low prices of food stuffs have discouraged farmers who may have invested so much capital leading to food shortages.
- Many farmers in Africa lack enough capital to purchase the required farm inputs.
- 7. Due to crop disease and pests, a lot of food is destroyed either on the farms or in the stores leading to food shortages.
- 8. The emphasis on cash crop farming at the expense of food crops has led to low food production, thus shortages of food.
- Environmental degradation through deforestation / overgrazing of animals has led to soil erosion leading to wasteland, hence low food production.
- Civil wars from Africa have displaced people from their farms and therefore diverting

their attention from farming, resulting in shortages of food.

11. Poor food policies have discouraged farmers as they are not given enough incentives in

case of food failure / poor economic planning.

 The young able-bodied young persons migrate to urban centres, thus leaving farming to

the aged who are not able to contribute much towards food production, hence food shortages.

 HIV / AIDS pandemic has impacted negatively on labour force in food production as

in mainly affects the energetic people.

14. Poor land tenure system / land fragmentation has reduced the acreage that would have

been used for food production, hence food shortages.

15. Many farmers have abandoned the growing of drought resistant crops which would be

used in times of food scarcity.

16. Over-reliance / dependence on famine relief food and other forms of aid have made

people not to look for permanent solutions to food shortages.

17. Lack of modern farming methods has led to low food production.

#### Effects of food shortage.

- 1. Loss of human lives.
- 2. Many people suffer from malnutrition / deficiency diseases.
- 3. It has forced people to dependence on food aid / relief food.
- It has led to poor economic development as money meant for it is used to buy food.
- 5. It has led to insecurity / raids / political unrest as people steal food and lose confidence in their government.
- 6. Stagnant of Agro-based industries and hence unemployment.
- 7. Disruption of children's education children drop out of school.
- 8. Increased food prices for the little that is available.
- Refugee problem as people move to other places to look for food.

#### Remedies / solutions

- 1. New farming methods need to be introduced by the governments.
- 2. Land reclamation needs to be adopted to increase farming land.
- 3. Introduce good food storage facilities to reduce wastage.
- 4. Sound national food policy to be adopted by the respective governments.
- 5. The governments need to stop civil wars. 9. Re-afforestation has been encouraged
- 6. Provision of extension services to educate farmers on their land.
- 7. Re-afforestation needs to be encouraged to reduce the effect of drought on agriculture.
- 8. The governments need to make funds available for machinery and input.
- 9. The governments need to reduce taxation on farm inputs to encourage farmers to increase their produce.
- 10. The governments need to improve transport and communication network to facilitate
  - movement and communication of skills and ideas.
- 11. The governments need to encourage Family planning so as to have small and manageable families for the food available.

#### Steps taken by Kenya to solve food problem.

- 1. Enhanced research in institutions like
- 2. Agricultural training institutions have been established to train experts.
- 3. Introduction of agriculture as a subject in schools to educate learners on new and better techniques of farming that could increase production of food in the country.
- 4. Educating the public on the importance of family planning.
- 5. Formulation of food security policy e.g. a 1. Some goods were not easily handled as

- minimum amount of cereals in government silos has been set.
- 6. Food imports during drought season to alleviate the shortage.
- 7. Genetically engineered crops and animals have been produced.
- 8. Encourage rural industrialization to control rural- Urban migration by the energetic youths.
- to reduce the effect of drought.

#### How poor transport has led to food shortage in Africa.

- 1. High transport cost, thus high food prices.
- 2. Poor distribution of food.
- 3. Delays in the transport of food, hence wastes and losses
- 4. Discourage farmers, hence low agricultural production.
- 5. Undermines effectiveness of agriculture extension offices.
- 6. Agricultural input delays, hence leading to poor production.

#### TOPIC 4:TRADE.

Trade is the legal exchange of good and / or services.

#### Methods of trade

- Barter- exchange of goods for goods.
- No money involved.
- 2. Currency-Money is the medium of exchange.

#### **Disadvantages of Barter**

- they were bulky.
- 2. It was not easy to agree on the value / exchange rate.
- 3. In case the traders lacked double coincidence it was a problem.
- 4. Some of the trade goods were not easily or never divisible.
- 5. Lack of storage value for perishable goods.

#### **Advantages**

- Poor countries without adequate foreign currencies benefits by exchanging what they have with what they don't have.
- 2. Encourages self- reliance in developing countries.
- 3. Human wants are satisfied.
- 4. It can help to promote living standards.
- 5. It benefits where money is non-existent.
- 6. It avoids wastage as demand and supply tend to equate.
- 7. It promotes interaction hence good relation, peace and stability.

#### Advantages of currency.

- 1. Easily stored as wealth for a long period.
- 2. Easily divisible in to smaller units.
- 3. It is lighter to transport currency as compared to goods / It is convenient, since it is not bulky.
- 4. It can be used to measure the value of goods and services.
- 5. It is convertible in to electronic devices for payments unlike goods.
- 6. It is universally accepted.

#### Disadvantages.

- 1. It can be easily lost.
- 2. Fake currencies can come up.
- 3. Devaluation of the currency.

#### Characteristics of currency.

- It should be divisible to allow easy use in small units.
- 2. It should be acceptable by the society.
- 3. It should remain stable to give a stable value over years.
- 4. It should be durable to retain quality

#### Types/classification of trade

This classification is based on the scale, volume of goods and services involved, distance covered and merchants involved.

#### 1. Local

- It is conducted within a locality e.g. Country.

#### Its features.

- 1. It involves the exchange of goods in the same geographical area.
- 2. It has few merchants.
- 3. Variety of goods is limited.
- 4. It involves the exchange of goods in small volume.

#### Factors that favored its origin

- 1. Surplus production.
- 2. Climate and environmental conditions.
- 3. Natural calamities.
- 4. Population increase.

#### Effects of local trade.

- Peaceful co-existence among people / communities.
- 2. Development of urban centers from trading centres.
- 3. It satisfied the requirements of a locality.
- 4. New products were made available to the people.
- 5. It led to improved transport system.

#### 2. Regional trade.

#### Characteristics of regional trade.

- 1. It involves more goods.
- 2. Had more merchants.
- 3. Was better organized with markets.
- People specialized in trade as their means of their livelihood.
- 5. Presence of middlemen in the trade.
- This trade between two regions e.g. long distance trade and Trans-Sahara trade.
- ⇒ The long distance trade took place between the East coast of Africa and the interior.
- Some of the communities included the Arabs. Swahili, and Mijikenda etc.

#### Trans-Saharan trade

#### Factors that favored.

- Existence of local trade in W. Sudan & among the Berbers which provided the base for trade.
- 2. Existence of trade routes across the desert made transportation easier.
- 3. The existence of the camel which provided transport across the desert. (Pack animals)
- 4. Tuaregs provided guidance to the caravans across the Sahara.
- 5. Existence of powerful leaders who provided political stability encouraged trade e.g. Mansa Musa of Mali.
- 6. Conquest and settlement of Arabs in North Africa led to the increase of

- trading activities.
- 7. Existence of trade goods especially gold and salt.
- 8. Activities between North Africa and Southern Europe and Middle East.
- 9. Existence of Oasis which provided water and acted as resting area for traders.
- 10. Demand for commodities both in North and West Africa respectively.
- Existence of rich and enterprising merchants in N. Africa who provided the needed capital.
- Agriculture in W. Africa provided a strong economy on which, wider trade was based.

#### Goods involved.

From the North – Salt, Horses, glass ware, beads, Mirrors, needles, perfumes, spices, dried fruits, fire arms, daggers and cowrie shells.

**From South**- Gold, **Slaves**, kola nuts, feathers, Hides and skins, **Ivory**, Gum, Dyed clothes and pepper.

The main items were GOLD and salt.

#### Why the camel replaced the horse.

- 1. It is stronger and carries heavier goods.
- 2. It can travel for several days without water or food.
- 3. Its broad feet enables it to walk without sinking in the sand.
- 4. It has a reservoir of food and water in their stomach and hump.

#### Roles of Tuaregs.

- They acted as guides to the traders.
- 2. They provided security for the traders.
- 3. They provide the traders with basic needs like food.
- 4. They acted as interpreters / Translators.

- 5. They maintained the Oasis and water wells.
- 6. They provided accommodation / shelter.

### NB- These routes are classified as Primary/main and Secondary.

#### Trans- Saharan trade

#### Organization

- It was between the people from South of the Sahara, mainly Western Sudan and the Arabs from the North of Africa.
- 2. The wealthy merchants from the North provided the funds for the caravans.
- The Caravan leaders assembled the goods that were in demand in Western Sudan / Salt, clothes Horses guns, and weapons.
- 4. The caravans collected the basic requirements for the journey.
- 5. The traders travelled in a convoy / caravans for security.
- 6. The nomads / Tuaregs guided the caravans through the desert.
- 7. The guides charged the caravans a minimal fee for the services rendered.
- 8. Local agents in Western Sudan acted as intermediaries for effective communication.
- 9. The traders gave gifts / tribute to the rulers in Western Sudan.
- Goods from Western Sudan included Kola nuts, slaves & gold.
- 11. The trade was mainly barter type silent.
- 12. There were three trade routes linking the North and Western Sudan.
- 13. The Camel was used to transport goods.

#### Trans-Saharan Trade Routes.

- Fez-Marrkesh-Wadan-Walata
- 2. Sajilmasa-Tuat-Gao-Timbuktu
- 3. Tunisia-Ghadames-Agades-Hausaland
- 4. Tripoli-Fezzan-Bornu
- 5. Cairo-Murzuk-Bilma-Kono
- 6. Sajilmasa-Walata-Taghaza-Andaghost

#### Challenges / Problems encountered

- 1. Long and stressful journey.
- Dangers in the routes e.g. could be attacked by wild animals and other desert creatures.
- Extreme weather conditions of the desert, e.g. very hot during the day very cold during the night.
- 4. Traders often lost their way in the desert due to frequent shifting of routs.
- 5. Scarcity of basic needs e.g. water and food.
- 6. Attacks by hostile desert communities.
- 7. Many were killed by the frequent sand storms.
- 8. Disruption of their journey during intercommunity wars / Insecurity due to declining and falling of kingdoms.
- 9. Language barrier / Lack of common language for transacting trade.
- 10. Exhaustion of trade goods especially gold.
- 11. They were robbed by desert people.

#### Decline

#### Reasons

- The main trading goods got exhausted e.g. salt and gold.
- As the Berbers and Tuaregs abdicated their role, insecurity greatly increased, thus exposing the caravans to a lot of robbery / Almoravids and Tuaregs invaded the region of Songhai, thus causing insecurity which discouraged the caravans.
- 3. When Portugal and Spain invaded Morocco ports along Atlantic and Mediterranean, she could not access

- goods, hence the trade was disrupted.
- 4. The Ottoman Turks invaded North Africa caused many wars which affected the trading activities.
- 5. Insecurity and anarchy in the Western Sudan area when it was invaded by Morocco / Political instability in the region was a threat to caravan.
- The development and growth of Trans-Atlantic trade / Establishment of commercial ports at the West African coast rendered caravans trade unpopular as it was slow and risky.
- 7. Anti- slavery movement started in Britain paved a threat to trade.
- 8. Resources in the two regions (North and South) came under the control of the Europeans following their colonization of the areas.
- When Europeans entered the interior, they stated dealing with the producers directly, thus rendering the Barbars and Tuaregs useless / Colonization of North and West Africa took over the resources, thus weakening it.
- Increased possession of fire arms intensified warfare between trading centres.

#### Effects of Trans-Sahara Trade.

#### Negative

- 1. Increase warfare in the region.
- 2. Many people in the region were captured as slaves / depopulation of the region.
- 3. Decline of some kingdoms.
- 4. Destruction of wildlife due to demand in lyory.

#### **Positive**

 Improved mode of transport in the region with the introduction of camels

- and horse.
- 2. Sharia law was introduced in the region.
- 3. Islamic and Arabic cultures spread to Western Sudan.
- 4. Introduction of Arabic architectural designs.
- 5. Islamic system of education was introduced in the region.
- 6. Facilitated the spread of Islam in the region of Western Sudan.
- 7. Led to interaction between the North Africa and Sudan belt.
- 8. Iron tools were introduced in the region.
- 9. Stimulated the growth of smithing technology.
- A class of wealthy merchants emerged as a result of wealth earned from the trade.
- 11. Growth of strong empires and kingdoms.
- 12. Trading centres later grew in to urban centres eg Qidar, Lagos, Port Norvo, Elmina, Komenda, Goree and Dakar.
- 13. Agriculture was boosted with the introduction of new crops in the region.

### How West African Communities benefited from the trade (Trans – Saharan)

- 1.They were able to acquire new essential commodities e.g. cloth.
- 2.Commercial centres developed along the trade routes, and this was an economic boost to the West African economy.
- 3.Some Africa leaders established strong armies using the wealth and arms from the trade / Revenue from the trade was used to strengthen the empires.
- 5.It enhanced local trade.
- 6.It facilitated the spread of Islam / It led to the introduction of Islamic culture in the region.
- 7.It opened up West Africa to the outside world, hence establishment of diplomatic relations with North Africa.
- 8.It boosted agricultural produce with iron

tools acquired through the trade. 9.Use of Sharia law to administer states in West Africa

### How the trans- Saharan trade led to the development of kingdoms in West Africa.

- It was a source of revenue through imports and export tax paid by traders.
- Kingdoms acquired firearms, horse and other weapons from North Africa which they used to establish strong armies to build empires and Kingdoms
- 3. Islamic Sharia, (Islamic law) which was introduced by the traders was used in administration of the Kingdoms
- 4. Islamic religion was used as a unifying factor.
- 5. It stimulated local trade which was a source of revenue for the state to grow.
- 6. The traders motivated the kings to acquire the benefits.
- 7. It enabled the kings to establish diplomatic links with North Africa and other countries for foreign exchange for wealth.

#### International trade

It involves different countries either in one continent of further.

#### **Trans-Atlantic trade**

- This trade involved Africa (mainly west), Europe and America.
- The people involved included Europeans,
   African middlemen and chiefs, American middlemen and plantation owners.
- The specific countries were Portugal, Spain, Holland (Netherlands), Britain and France,

and African-were Nigeria, Ghana and Senegal, While American were the Caribbean

Islands and U.S.A.

#### Items involved to Africa

- 1. Clothes
- 2. Ornaments
- 3. Alcoholic beverages
- 4. Utensils
- 5. Food stuffs
- 6. Gun and gun powder
- 7. Metals

NB/ From Africa, we had **slaves**, tobacco, gold, Ivory, gum, timber, pepper, skins and hides

and beewax.

### Factors that favoured the growth of the Trans-Atlantic trade.

- Africa slaves were stronger and resistant to the tropical diseases and could cope with strain and stress.
- 2. Demand for West African goods by Europeans.
- 3. European expansion to West Africa 1490's.
- 4. The introduction of fire arms facilitated the capture of slaves and hence their supply.
- 5. Increased demand for slaves labour in European countries.
- 6. Africa chiefs had developed a taste for European goods.
- 7. African slave labour was cheaper than European laborers and American Indian.
- 8. Exploitation of minerals and establishment of crop plantation in the Americas.
- 9. The increased demand of raw materials for the growing industries.
- The increased rivalry among European powers for control of overseas countries.
- 11. The lucrative nature of trade.
- 12. The construction of greater capacity ships.
- 13. There existed well defined routes.

#### Ways of obtaining slaves.

- 1. Raids organized by individuals or chiefs.
- 2. Warfare and sell of war captives / captives of war.
- 3. Abuse of power by leaders, thus selling their subjects for self-interests.
- 4. Through kidnapping / abduction- lonely travelers.
- 5. Enticement / trickery.
- 6. Selling off debtors / Panyarring.
- 7. Criminals or social misfits.

- 6. They acted as middlemen between European merchants and interior communities.
- They acquired / raided for slaves. 7.
- Rulers sold their own subjects / they 8. were sold as slaves.
- They marched slaves to the coast. 9.
- 10. They transported trade items to the coast.

#### Why African slaves were preferred.

- 1. They were available in large numbers.
- 2. They were found to be cheaper to use than European laborers and American Indians.
- 3. African slaves were thought to be immune to both European and tropical diseases.
- 4. They appeared stronger and therefore suitable for manual work.

#### Organization of the trade.

- 1. It operated along three triangular routes, namely Europe, West Africa and Americas.
- 2. The Europeans brought manufactured

- goods e.g. clothes to W. Africa and exchanged with slaves.
- 3. Money to finance the trade came from
- 4. Slaves were captured in the interior, yoked together and marched to the coasts in caravans.
- 5. Slaves were obtained through raiding.
- 6. Slaves were sold at particular centres along the W. African coast like Lagos.
- 7. They were stored in "warehouses" / Baraccoons while waiting to be transported.
- Roles of Africans in the Trans-Atlantic trade. 8. The slaves were tightly packed in ships and were shipped across the Atlantic under pathetic conditions which made many to die before reaching their destination.
  - 9. It was a barter form of trade.
  - 10. The prices depended on sex, size and
  - 11. In the Americas, the slaves were sold through auctioning.
  - 12. Once they had been bought, they were branded with the mark of their purchasers then taken to plantations and other places
  - 13. Products from the plantations / raw materials were then exported to European industries.

#### Reasons for its decline

- 1. Development of industrial revolution in European shifted demand for slaves to demand for agricultural produce.
- 2. Attainment of independence by U.S.A left Britain without colonies where she could take slaves to work / Closure of slave market in America.
- 3. Rise in humanitarians e.g. missionaries in Britain forced her to abandon slave trade and slavery / Philanthropists.

- 4. The development of **legitimate trade** which was more profitable and less costly.
- Britain abolished slave trade and influenced other countries in European to stop slave trade and slavery by signing treaties.
- 6. **Leading economists** argued that free people were more productive than slaves. Eg. Adam Smith.
- 7. French revolution in 1789 and spread of its ideas of liberty.

#### Others

- 8. Results of the **American civil war** of 1865 which was worn by those opposed to slavery.
- 9. Use of **machines** on farms rendered slaves unnecessary.
- Resistance by Africans in W. Africa and the new world made the Europeans to abandon slave trade.
- 11. Need to **retain Africans in their homeland** to produce raw materials for the developing industries.

#### Impact of the trade

#### **Political**

- 1. Warfare was revolutionized by the importation of firearms.
- 2. Growth and decline of some empires and Kingdoms
- 3. Many Africa communities were left weak and unable to resist the scramble and partition of Africa which followed.
- 4. Led to founding of Liberia and Sierra Leone.

#### Social

- 1. Some African cultures spread to USA.
- 2. Depopulation as many people were shipped away as slaves and others died.
- Forced emigration to the Americas / Mullato population emerged in West Africa.
- 4. Many slaves died before and after reaching Americas.
- 5. Led to the changes in social roles / separation of families.
- 6. The trade led to the origin of Negros (Black America)
- It exposed West Africa to many types of diseases came up following the conditions under which the slaves were captured and kept.
- 8. It also led to the emergence of a class of wealthy merchants who accumulated a lot of wealth from the trade.
- 9. Some of the trading centres later grew in to urban centres.
- It brought about fear and insecurity among the communities.

#### **Economic**

- Decline of the economic and agricultural development in Africa.
- 2. Britain expanded its industry and other European countries.
- Decline of the Trans- Saharan trade as many traders found the Trans-Atlantic trade more profitable.
- 4. Property was destroyed as communities raided each other for trade items.
- Some Africa leaders accumulated wealth and hence a class of rich merchants developed.
- Expansion of plantations agriculture in USA as there was cheap labour by the slaves.

### TOPIC5.DEVELOPMENT OF TRANSPORT

Transport is the movement of goods and /or people from one place to another.

#### Traditional forms of transport.

- 1. Human
- 2. Animal-Donkeys, Horses, Oxen, Mules: Camels, Llama and Alpaca, Elephants, water buffalo, Reindeer, Dogs.

#### Disadvantages of human transport.

- 1. It is slow / time consuming.
- 2. It is tiresome / tiring
- 3. It is limited in quantity of goods carried at ago.
- 4. It can only cover a short distances with goods.
- 5. It is cumbersome

#### Advantages of animal transport.

- 1. They can be used in inaccessible areas.
- 2. It is cheap to maintain animals eg dog.
- 3. They are safe since they are not prone to accidents.
- 4. They are environmental friendly.
- 5. Some animals can sense danger.

#### Disadvantages

- 1. They slow and time consuming / slow.
- 2. Animals are affected by poor health / injuries / attacked by wild animals.
- Rugged terrain / extreme weather conditions hamper the movement of animals.
- 4. It has limited carrying capacity.
- 5. Some are stubborn when tired.
- 6. Animal transport is limited to day time and not night time.

#### Others

- 7. They can only be used for short distances.
- 8. They require food and water.
- After the wheel was developed by the Sumerians, it facilitated transport.
- Charts were now developed to make animal transport easier.

#### Advantages of using a donkey.

- Its hooves are more suitable for walking on sandy, rocky or mountainous terrain.
- 2. It could go longer in dry conditions without water and food.
- 3. It could carry bigger load.

#### **MODERN MEANS OF TRANSPORT**

#### Road transport

- ∋ Credited to Pierre Tresaguest (France) John Metcalf (Britain) Thomas Telford (Britain) and John Mc Adam.
- ∋ This was enhanced with the development of the wheel.
- The roman soldiers invented the murram (Roman) roads
- ∍ Later in the 19<sup>th</sup> c, the British developed the tarmac roads.
- Bridges and drainage were done before highways were developed.

#### Effects of the invention of the wheel.

- It made road transport faster, easier and comfortable.
- 2. Bigger loads could be carried
- 3. It facilitated interaction among people.
- 4. It enhanced trade.
- 5. It led to the development of roads.
- 6. It facilitated travel over long distances.
- 7. It assisted the spread of services like

- postal in Rome.
- 8. It improved and strengthened armies as they used chariots to transport soldiers.
- 9. It aided movement of administrators between places in Rome.
- 10. It was used for leisure activities e.g. in Racing.
- 11. In China, it was used to make high quality pots.

# How the invention of the wheel revolutionalized transport in Europe in the 19<sup>th</sup> Century.

- 1. People could travel faster than before.
- 2. They could cover long distances.
- 3. The Chariots / Wheel carts made travel comfortable.
- 4. Heavy loads could be carried over long distances.
- 5. Travelling became more secure.

#### Development of bicycle.

 Credited to Kirkpatric Macmillan (Scotland – 1839, Erness Michaux (France) – 1860, James Stanley (Britain)
 -1870, John Dunlop- 1888, 1893 – modern bicycle.

#### **VEHICLE**

- ∋ 1760 Homer (Germany) credited the manufacture of the vehicle.
- ∋ Leanardo da Vinci (Italy)
- 1740- Jacques de Van Canson, 1760 J.H. Generios, 1769- Joseph Cugnot (France), 1799- William Mehrust (Air engine), 1807 Isaac de Rivas, 1832- Samuel Wright, Christian Huygens, 1859- Etienne Lennoir, 1884 Edward Butter, Daimuler Gottlieb, Carl Benz, Murdock, Trevithick and Walter Hainwell.

#### in transporting oil.

- 1. Pipeline delivers oil faster than vehicles.
- 2. It is **safer** than using vehicles.
- It ensures regular / continuous supply of oil to required areas / depots.
- 4. It is **easier to maintain** the pipeline than vehicles.

#### Characteristics of the Roman roads.

- 11. They were built straight.
- 12. They were of high standard.
- 13. They were slightly curved.
- 14. They were highways, built high above the land to prevent flooding.
- 15. They consisted of network of tunnels and bridges.

#### Characteristic of tarmac/modern roads

- 1. They are durable.
- 2. They are all-weather roads.
- 3. Water drains easily / have good drainage.
- 4. They are wide.
- They have less sharp corners / they are straight.
- 6. They have a smooth surface, thus providing good motoring surface.
- 7. They are cheap and quick to build.

#### Effects of road transport.

The construction of the modern roads is credited to Thomas Telford (1757-1834),

George Wade (1673-1749), John Macadam (1756-1836), John Metcalfe (1717-1810)

#### Advantages of using pipeline over vehicles

#### The following are the effects of the construction of the roads.

- 1. Trade has been promoted.
- 2. Industrialization has been enhanced.
- 3. Urban centers have sprung up.
- 4. It earns countries with foreign exchange. How Rail transport has speeded up
- 5. It provides employment to many.
- 6. It has promoted other means of transport.
- 7. It has opened up new areas for development.
- 8. It has promoted interaction and better international understanding.
- 9. Time and money have been saved.
- 10. Has saved lives.

#### Advantages of road transport

- 1. It reduces the cost of transport / it is cheaper as compared to the other forms of transport.
- 2. It is faster as compared to water and railway transport.
- 3. It is flexible as compared the other forms of transport.

#### **Disadvantages**

- 1. Loss of lives due to many accidents.
- 2. Environmental unfriendly.
- 3. Traffic congestion.
- 4. When impossible, they inconvenience the users.
- 5. Limited to certain areas.eg it cannot go beyond lands.
- 6. Construction of all-weather road is expensive.

#### Rail transport

- It started in 1804 with Richard Trevithic making Major improvements on the locomotives.
- ∍ In 1812, John Blenkinson built the 1<sup>st</sup>

- successful locomotive which ran on cast - iron rails.
- Improvement was made later.
- Diesel engines were then invented and later replaced by electric engines.

### industrialization in Europe.

- 1. It facilitated the transportation of bulky raw materials to industries.
- 2. It facilitated the fast transportation of bulky manufactured goods to market.
- 3. It facilitated the transportation of fuel, especially coal to the industries.
- 4. It facilitated the transportation of workers to the industries.
- 5. It promoted interaction between towns and people, hence promoted investment in industries.
- 6. It promoted the migration & settlement of people to new areas which were sources of raw materials.
- 7. It opened up mining and farming in the interior of most countries.
- 8. It facilitates the transportation of bulky goods and machinery for installation in industries.
- 9. Revenue from the railways was used in setting up industries.

#### Effects of railway transport in the 19<sup>th</sup> Century

- 1. Railway transport has promoted the movement of people, thus encouraging Social & cultural interaction.
- 2. Trade has been intensified.
- 3. It has boosted industrial development, thus creating employment.
- 4. Towns and urban centers have sprung
- 5. It has opened up remote areas to the outside world.
- 6. It facilitated European pacification of

- their overseas colonies.
- 7. It facilitated transportation of bulky goods.
- 8. It facilitated transportation of industrial workers / labour.
- 9. It led to wide spread migration and settlement of people.
- 10. It has facilitated other forms of transport. 1.
- 11. Smoke from the trains led to pollution of the environment.
- 12. It was a source of revenue for the countries that used it.

#### **Disadvantages**

- It is expensive to constructs and maintain.
- 2. It is less flexible- no diverging or reverse.
- 3. It can cause fatal accidents.
- 4. It pollutes the environment.
- 5. It is not self-sufficient since it has to be supplemented by road transport.

#### Problems associated with rail transport.

- 1. Rails do not offer door to door services.
- 2. They are costly to build and maintain
- 3. Different rail gauges used by different countries require trans-shipment, thus delays.
- Steep gradients are unsuitable for railways as it requires leveling, embarkments and constructions of bridges.

#### Water transport

- The means of water transport in ancient times included Rafts, Logs / tree trunks, Sailing ships, Boats / Oar driven boats, Canoes
- This was made possible by use of canal vessels, boats, motor-driven ships,

- modern passenger liners, freight vessels, military vessels, ferries.
- Later, the Portuguese invented the Caravels and Carracks as modern ships.

#### Results of the construction of canals.

- 1. They linked existing waterways.
- 2. It shortened routes and helped in the transportation of Bulky goods.
- 3. They were used for supplying some areas with water.
- 4. They were used for irrigation.
- 5. It was used to control flooding / for drainage.

#### Air transport

- → This space possible with Leanado Da Vinci in 1452-1519 when he invented an ornithopter.
- ⇒ The 1<sup>st</sup> real invention was in 1903-05 when the American Wright brothers (Orvile and Wilbur) invented an aeroplane.

#### Disadvantages of Air Transport.

- It is expensive to procure / maintain an aircraft.
- 2. Construction of airstrips requires a lot of resources.
- The aircrafts can only land & take off in specific / designated areas, thus inconveniencing the users.
- 4. Aircrafts cannot carry heavy / bulky goods as compared to the other forms of transport.
- 5. It can only be used by the well to do members of the society, thus making it inaccessible to many.
- 6. Its operations are affected by unfavorable weather conditions.
- 7. Aircrafts emit gases which contribute to

- the pollution of the environment.
- 8. The use of aircrafts in military warfare has resulted in destruction of property.
- Accidents by aircrafts are fatal / chances of survival are minimal.
- 10. It requires a lot of expertise / skilled personnel to manage its operations.

### Challenges encountered in space exploration.

- 1. It is a costly venture as it requires high technology.
- 2. Hostile and unsuitable space environment for human life.
- 3. Presence of solar and cosmic radiation and micrometeorities that can affect spacecrafts and astronauts.
- 4. Extreme temperatures like bright sunlight and darkness.

### Advantages of space exploration.

- 1. It has facilitated our understanding of the universe.
- 2. It has led to improved manufacture of aircrafts and telescopes.
- 3. It has led to improved air force weapons.
- 4. It has improved navigation.
- 5. It has improved weather forecasting.

### Effects of air transport.

- It facilitated space exploration for specific and military purposes.
- 2. They have made evacuation of people from disaster areas easier.
- They make the delivery of valuable and perishable goods and people faster and efficient.
- 4. It has led to expansion of trading activities.
- 5. They have provided employment

- opportunities.
- 6. It is used to spray pesticides, hence promoting agriculture.
- 7. They are used to destroy marauding insects like locusts.
- 8. It earns the country foreign exchange.
- It has promoted international cooperation.
- 10. It has facilitated aerial surveys, photography and mapping.
- 11. It has promoted the tourist industry especially in developing countries.
- 12. It has intensified military warfare.
- 13. It has led to widespread international terrorism through hijacking.
- 14. It has contributed to environmental pollution.
- 15. In case of accidents, it leads to massive loss of lives.

### Results of space exploration.

- Aircrafts unlike the shuttle and other gadgets for journeying in the space have been developed.
- 2. It has enhanced new discoveries that have increased our understanding of the universe.
- 3. It has led to the production of advanced airforce weapon systems that are dangerous to the entire human race.
- It has promoted Scientific research particularly in America and Europe. NASA and ESA have taken the lead in this field.

### Effects of modern means of transport.

- It has encouraged migration and settlement
- 2. It has caused more accidents.
- 3. It has led to the discovery of other lands.
- 4. Trade has expanded.
- 5. Space has been controlled and exploited.
- 6. Smuggling has intensified.

- 7. It has led to pollution of environment.
- 8. It has facilitated exchanged of ideas.
- 9. It has enhanced exploitation of natural resources.
- It has enhanced social development like schools.
- 11. It has led to growth of urban centers.
- 12. It has promoted employment.
- 13. It has caused financial constrains to users
- 14. It has opened up many parts of the world
- 15. It has promoted international terrorism.

## How poor transport hinders industrialization in the 3<sup>rd</sup> word countries.

- It has caused delays in marketing goods / products.
- 2. It has caused delays in delivering raw materials.
- It has led to high supply cost of raw materials.
- 4. It has led to high transport costs.

## TOPIC 6. DEVELOPMENT OF COMMUNICATION

**Communication** is the passing of a message from one point to another.

### Traditional forms of communication

- Verbal / language. 2. Gesture-on body. 3.
   Signals- e.g. bananas.
- **4**. Fire and smoke.**5**. Drum beats.**6**. Messengers / runners.
- 7. Horn blowing. 8. Screams and cries.10.

Bells. 11. Flags.

- **9**. Whistles. **12**. Semaphore (Towers on hilltops with movable arms).
- 13. Written (scrolls and tablets). 14. Birds

### Disadvantages of fire.

- Smoke signals could be easily misinterpreted.
- 2. Its effectiveness depends on weather.
- 3. The message could be missed if there was no one on the lookout.
- 4. It can only be used to cover a short distance.
- 5. The range of message conveyed was limited.
- 6. It is affected by terrain.
- 7. It cannot be used to convey confidential messages.

### Advantages of traditional forms of communication.

- They were visible, faster and cheaper.eg Fire and smock.
- 2. Some of them could overcome the odds of weather e.g. Drum beats.
- 3. Some were very specific in sending the messages e.g. Selective drumming.
- 4. Some could give a feedback e.g. Messengers.
- 5. Some could also explain certain issues e.g. Messengers.
- Some could keep the message confidential to their community as the outsiders could not understand their language e.g. Messengers.
- 7. Some could be used to convey relayed messages e.g. Drum beats and trumpet.
- 8. Some could be used at any time of the day e.g. Drum beats and trumpets.

### **Disadvantages**

1. Some could be misinterpreted e.g.

### Gestures.

- 2. Some could only be used to pass a message to shorter distances e.g. Fire & smock, & messengers.
- 3. The range of messages conveyed was limited e.g. Smoke and fire.
- 4. Some were restricted to certain weather conditions, like Fire and Smoke.
- 5. Some were environmental unfriendly, thus they destroyed wildlife e.g. Fire and Advantages smoke.
- 6. Some were slow e.g. Messengers.
- 7. Some were unreliable e.g. birds.
- 8. Some could distort the message e.g. Messengers.
- 9. Some involved dangers e.g. Messenger could be attacked on way.

### Disadvantages of horn blowing as a means of communication.

- 1. They were not effective in mountainous regions.
- 2. Strong winds affected the message.
- 3. It was limited to those who could hear.
- 4. It required skilled persons.
- 5. Misinterpretation of the message could occur.
- 6. It was not sensitive to confidentiality.
- 7. It could not cover a wide range.

### Types of messages that could be sent by use of drum beats.

- 1. Announcement of ceremonies or festivals.
- 2. Death or mourning
- 3. Declaration of war.
- 4. Arrival of stranger.
- 5. Impending danger.

### Early writing was done on scroll and stone tablets.

The earliest forms writing were pictographic (symbols for objects) idea graphic (symbols for ideas) examplecuneiform by Sumerians and hieroglyphics by Egyptians.

- 1. They could be stored for future use.
- 2. They conveyed accurate messages.
- 3. They could be translated into many languages for easier understanding by many people.
- 4. They provided reliable information since it could not be forgotten.

### Factors to consider when sending a message.

- 1. The urgency / Time / Speed.
- 2. The clarity / Complexity / Simplicity.
- 3. The distance between the sender and the receiver.
- 4. Availability of facilities / Method / Means.
- 5. The confidentiality of the message.
- 6. The cost of the means to be used.

### Modern means of Communication.

- 1. Telephone / cell phone. 2. Email. 3. Radio.
- 4. Pager. 5. TV.
- 6. Telegraph. 7. Internet.8. Satellite 9. Fax.
- 10. Telex
- 11. Print media e.g. Newspapers, interest newspapers, magazines,
  - periodicals (at regular intervals).

### Modern means of print media.

- 1. Newspapers.
- Magazines.

### WRITTEN MESSAGES

- 3. Journals.
- 4. Periodicals.
- 5. Books.
- 6. Pamphlets.
- 7. Posters.
- 8. Braille.
- 9. Brochures.

### **Advantages**

- 1. Some are potable e.g. Cell phone.
- 2. Some convey Picture message, thus more of reality e.g. TV.
- 3. Some convey live messages e.g. TV.
- 4. Some are entertaining e.g. Radio.
- 5. They are educative e.g. TV, radio, internet.
- 6. One can serve many e.g. TV, Radio.

### Disadvantages

- 1. They have a short life span.
- 2. They are not easily available.
- 3. They can be used as tool for propaganda.
- 4. They can give misleading information or adverts.
- 5. They are costly as compared to the traditional means.
- 6. They promote social crime eg fraud, drug abuse and terrorism.
- 7. They pollute the environment.
- 8. They have poor reception network / frequency.
- 9. They can't be used without source of power.
- 10. They cause radio-activity, hence harmful to health.
- They have eroded cultural values / contain / caused deviant behavior / Pornography.

**Telegraph** - use of radio signals or coded electrical signals.

- Dots and dashes are used to represent

numbers, letters, and punctuations.

### Facsimile trans receiver (fax)

- It transmits text, not sound
- It can also transmit images or copies plus pictures, photos etc.

**Telex** -Point to point system that uses keyboard to transmit typed

text over telephone lines at individual company locations.

**Satellite** - Artificial device going round the earth, moon and other

planet, transmitting back to the earth scientific information

**pager** - It uses a phone to call the pager number.

- The person then dials the number of voice message, and within moments, the pager

carriers alerted by an audible

"beep" or silent vibration. His no can be read on the screen.

### Impact of telecommunication.

- 1. Communication has been greatly changed for the better.
- 2. Management for the information has been enhanced.
- 3. It has provided entertainment.
- 4. It helps to bring reality to viewers.
- 5. It has promoted cultural exchange and understanding.
- 6. It has promoted air and water transport.
- 7. Trade and business has been enhanced.
- 8. It has made access to information easy.
- 9. Security systems have been improved.
- 10. Promoted air/space exploration.
- 11. It has also provided and facilitated employment.
- 12. It has promoted economic development.

- 13. Lives have been saved.
- 14. It has facilitated storage of information more conveniently through the use of computer system.
- 15. It has promoted fast transmission of ideas.
- 16. It has facilitated the duty of weather forecasting.

### **Negative**

- It has promoted international social crime.
- 2. It has promoted immorality.
- 3. Warfare has been revolutionalized.
- 4. It is addictive to some people.
- 5. It has caused noise pollution.
- 6. Lives have been lost through radioactivity.

### Factors that undermine the effectiveness of telecommunications service.

- 1. Pornographic materials ruin the moral fiber of the society.
- 2. Misleading advertisements and information.
- 3. The services are expensive.
- 4. Has short life.
- 5. It is difficult to store.
- 6. Illiterate may not benefit.
- 7. It may not be detailed, hence does not give full information.
- 8. Irresponsible reporting causes disunity and chaos.
- 9. It has facilitated drug- trafficking activities.
- 10. It can easily portray a biased view.
- 11. It can be destructive when used as a propaganda tool.
- 12. Network failure affects their operations.

### Limitations of a pager

- 1. They can only operate within a certain range.
- 2. The receiver cannot reply back the message.
- 3. They are expensive.
- 4. They depend on high technology

### Advantages of using E-Mail.

- 1. Computers make work easier.
- 2. It can store information effectively.
- 3. It can be used for entertainment.
- 4. It can be used for education.
- 5. It can be used for business activities, thus E-commerce.
- 6. It can transmit information worldwide.
- 7. It is cheap to send a message.

### Advantages of TV

- 1. They convey information more vividly than other forms.
- 2. They are used for entertainment.
- 3. They are used to pass educational programmes.
- 4. They are used in advertisements.
- 5. They are effective in transmitting ideas since it commands attention.
- 6. They have created job opportunities.
- 7. It bridges the limitation of real-time communication.

### TOPIC 7.DEVELOPMENT OF INDUSTRY

Industry started during the time of the early man.

### Early sources of energy

### Wood Uses

1. It was used for making fire for heat for

warming people during cold spells.

- 2. It was used in making / cooking food.
- 3. It provided light at night or during darkness.
- 4. Charcoal for heat for firing pottery and smelting iron.

### Advantages of wood

- 1. It is cheap.
- 2. It is easily available.
- 3. It is renewable.
- 4. It encourages mass production of goods. Advantages of wind.

### **Disadvantages**

- 1. It is affected by rain.
- 2. It pollutes the environment / Chocking.
- 3. Deforestation / Scarcity of coal.
- 4. It is cumbersome to use.

#### Water

- It was used to turn water wheels / grinding stones in flour mills.
- 2. It was also used to wash / clean machines / Maintain cleanliness.
- 3. It was used to cool the machines.
- 4. It was used to turn spinning machines in It was used for drying grains. textile industry.
- 5. It was used to produce steam power to drive machines.

### Advantages of water.

- 1. It can be reliable so long as there is enough rainfall.
- 2. It saves time and human energy.
- 3. It encourages mass production of goods.
- 4. It enhances improvement of quality production.

### Disadvantages.

→ When water level is low, it cannot be reliable.

### Wind

#### Uses

- 1. It was used to propel boats / sailing
- 2. It was also used to drive / turn windmills to grind grain.
- 3. It was used to drive water pumps.
- 4. It was used in winnowing grains.
- 5. It was used to dry grains.

- 1. It is cheap / readily available.
- 2. It saves time and human energy.
- 3. It encourages mass production of goods.
- 4. It is clean.

### **Disadvantages**

- 1. It relies on nature, hence not reliable.
- 2. It cannot be controlled.

#### Sun

### Advantages.

- 1. It is clean and available where there is sunlight.
- 2. It is freely available.
- 3. It is clean and non-pollutant.

### Uses of metals in Africa.

### Metals used as currency in pre-colonial Africa.

- 1. Gold
- 2. Copper
- 3. Bronze
- 4. Iron
- 5. Silver

### Advantages of metals.

- 1. They were durable as compared to the stone that was used before.
- 2. The cutting edge could be sharpened.
- 3. It could be made in different shapes after heating.
- 4. It was not wasted since it could be smelted and reworked.

### 1. Gold

- a. It was used to make ornaments and decorations.
- b. The rich in Egypt used it to make sword and knife handles.
- c. It was used as currency (coin).
- d. It was used as a trade item.
- e. It was also used to make weapons and knife blades.
- f. It was also used as a measure of wealth.

### 2. Copper

- a. It was used to make utensils and containers like pots.
- b. It was used to make tools e.g. chisels and axes.
- c. It could also be used to make ornaments like rings and bangles.
- d. It was used in making weapons e.g. daggers and swords.
- e. It was mixed with other metals for various purposes e.g. Tin for bronze Alloys like bronze & brass.
- It was used as a medium of exchange / used as currency in for of copper bars.
- g. It was used as a trade item.
- h. It was used as medicine i.e. an ointment for wounds especially in Central Africa.
- It was used to make King's plaques and artwork / Statues / Helmets.

### 3. Bronze.

- a. It was used to make weapons.
- b. It was also used to make sculptures / statues and decorations.
- c. It was used as a measure of wealth.
- d. It was also to make tools like shields and chariots.
- e. It was used to make ornaments.
- f. It was used as a trade item.
- g. To make masks.
- h. To make containers, knives, Pans, vases, etc.

### Disadvantages of bronze.

- It loses sharpness easily and becomes blunt as the metal is soft.
- 2. It is expensive.
- 3. It is difficult to get.
- 4. It is not easy to get the right proportions of the metals used.

#### 4. Iron

### Factors that favored its spread.

- Trade between Africa and Mesopotamiahad existed even before.
- 2. Bantus in the Congo Basin and the Southern Cushites spread the skills to other of Africa.
- 3. Travelers and messengers received iron gifts which they took to their homes.
- 4. Though warfare as Hittites invaded Egypt.
- 5. Development of agriculture, as better tools were made.

### Its uses.

- 1. It was medium of exchange / Currency.
- 2. It was used as a trade item.
- 3. It was used for marking agriculture tools.
- 4. It was used as a measure of wealth.

- 5. It was used for making weapons for defence.
- It was used as apparatus for use during ceremonies.

NB/ Iron, Gold, Copper, Silver and Bronze and animal labour.
were used as currency in pre-colonial Africa. 2. The use of steam power as new source

### Disadvantages of using iron

- 1. It too heavy for transportation.
- 2. It is not strong enough for making heavy machinery.
- 3. It easily rusts.

### Effects of iron working in pre-colonial Africa.

- Improved agriculture as the tools were used to clear more land for cultivation.
- 2. Use of iron tools led to increased food production.
- 3. Increased food production led to population expansion.
- 4. Use of iron weapons led to increased warfare and other conflicts.
- 5. Expansion of trading activities between communities.
- Possession of iron weapons and implements facilitated migrations of some communities.
- 7. Specialization developed as some people were blacksmiths and cultivators.
- 8. Iron items were used as medium of exchange.
- 9. Destruction of forests influenced change of climate and environment.
- 10. Emergence of strong kingdoms like Buganda and Bunyoro.
- New cultures associated with iron working developed in Africa e.g. the Leopard Copje in Central Africa & Nok & Tarunga in Nigeria.
- 12. It led to the development of urban centres eg Meroe.

### INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION IN EUROPE.

### Its characteristics

- The use of machines to replace human and animal labour.
- The use of steam power as new source of energy to replace water, wind and animal power.
- 3. Increased exploitation and use of coal, and steel.
- 4. Rise of factory system in towns instead of cottage industries in homes.
- 5. The development of better forms of transport e.g. water, road etc.
- 6. Improved living standards and an increase in the human population.
- 7. Lange scale production of goods by machines.
- 8. Development of scientific research and use of scientific knowledge in production.
- 9. Expansion of trade both locally and internationally.
- Rise of modern capitalism for more wealth which was invested back in the industry.
- 11. The growth of trade union movement to cater for the rights of workers.
- 12. Increase human population who required more manufactured goods.
- Change in political climate which led to the acquisition of colonies to provide raw materials and market for the industries.
- 14. Improvement in agriculture to provide workers with food and raw materials.

### Factors that favored industrial revolution

- Increased scientific and technological knowledge and skills.
- 2. Scientific discoveries in many fields.
- 3. Expansion of Transport and communication facilities.

- 4. Population expansion and need for more food and labour.
- 5. Increased demand for goods and services by European and international market.
- 6. Availability of enough valuable minerals.
- 7. Development of support sectors e.g. Bank and insurance.
- 8. Peace and international political stability.
- 9. The government's encouragement, support and desire to appear great.
- 10. Arms race and international spirit of competition.
- 11. Rich merchants who invested in industry.

### **Effects of industrial revolution in Europe.**

- 1. Mechanization for production.
- 2. Increased production of goods and services.
- 3. Expanded both local and international trade.
- 4. Boost to transport and communication for raw materials and market.
- 5. Urbanization to accommodate the high number of rural- urban migrations.
- 6. European nations amassed wealth.
- and hence, job specialization.
- 8. Job opportunities were created.
- 9. Exploitation of natural resources and development of new sources of energy e.g. Electricity.
- 10. Improvement and discovery of new and better methods of farming due to increased demand for agricultural products.
- 11. Poor working conditions led to the introduction of legislation for social reforms by the British government e.g. Trade unions.
- 12. Promoted redevelopment in science and technology.

### Social

- 1. Rural urban migration for employment.
- 2. Sanitation and refuse disposal became a problem.
- 3. Pollution increased.
- 4. Living conditions become bad due to increase unemployment e.g. Social evils like prostitution.
- 5. More demand for services provided by hotels, banks, post offices etc increased.
- 6. Rise in social classes in Europe.
- 7. Gender inequality increased.
- 8. Overcrowding
- 9. Spread of diseases.
- 10. Poor working conditions.
- 11. Long working hours
- 12. Increase of industrial accidents and injuries.
- 13. Employment of women and children.
- 14. Inadequate social amenities like housing.
- 15. Population increased.

### **Political**

- 1. It facilitated growth of scramble and partition of Africa.
- 7. European economies become diversified, 2. It led to the growth of Marxism (community through socialism)

### Problems faced by factory works in Europe during the industrial revolution

- They were paid low wages. 1.
- 2. They worked for long hours.
- 3. They were exposed to accidents.
- 4. Inadequate housing made them to live in slums.
- 5. Poor sanitation led to outbreak of diseases.
- 6. Accident victims were laid off without compensation.

### Uses of various sources of energy

During industrial revolution in Europe, various sources of energy such as coal, oil, steam and electricity were used.

### Coal

### Uses

- 1. To drive steam engines.
- 2. It was used to heat water.
- 3. It provided lighting.
- 4. It was used to drive locomotives.
- 5. It was used as raw material to manufacture dye and pharmaceutical products.

### Disadvantage of coal

- 1. It is bulky, hence difficult to transport.
- 2. It causes air pollution.
- 3. Mining of coal can lead to injuries / death.
- 4. It is a non-renewal source of energy.
- 5. It is expensive to mine and transport.

### Oil / Petroleum

- 1. It was used as fuel in transport.
- 2. It was used in industry for production of synthetic fiber.
- 3. It was used to generate electricity.
- 4. It was used for lighting e.g. Paraffin (kerosene).
- 5. It was used to run engines in industries.
- 6. It was used to tar mark roads.
- 7. It was used as grease metals in industry.

### Disadvantages of oil

- 1. It is expensive to transport.
- 2. Prospecting for oil is expensive.
- 3. It affects land or environment as the area of land may sink.
- 4. It is expensive to build refineries, which

become useless when oil is exhausted.

- 5. It may cause outbreak of dangerous fire.
- 6. It destroys marine.

### Steam

- It was used to open doors of temples in Egypt.
- 2. It was used for spinning in textile industries (driving heavy machines in factories)
- It was used to pump water out of coal mines.
- 4. It powered locomotives and ships.

### Disadvantages of steam

- 1. It is not easily controllable.
- 2. It is environmental unfriendly.
- 3. It is expensive.
- 4. It is not reliable as it depends on availability of coal.

### Electricity.

It was discovered by a Briton called Michael Faraday in 1831.

- 1. It was used for lighting.
- 2. It was also used for heating and cooking.
- 3. It power factory machines.
- 4. It was used in communication though electric signals in gadgets.
- 5. It was used in powering transport vehicles.
- 6. It was used in powering engines used in irrigation.
- 7. It was also used in powering satellites in space.

### Advantages.

- It could be regulated / controlled / Could be switched on and off.
- 2. It could be put to many uses like

lighting.

- It could be used far from the source / Industries could be established anywhere.
- 4. It is clean working environment / Non pollutant.
- 5. The cost of production of goods was made cheaper.

### **Disadvantages**

- 1. It cannot be stored like coal and oil.
- 2. HEP depends on level of water in rivers, dams etc.
- 3. Power failure inconveniences consumers.
- 4. It can be dangerous if not properly handled.
- 5. Demand is variable, hence not easy to satisfy consumers all times.

### Atomic and Nuclear

It was invented by French called Antoine Henri Beckquerel in 1896 (uranium produces radiation or energy in waves). Radio-activity.

- 1. It is used to provide light homes.
- 2. It is used to generate electricity.
- 3. Drive locomotives and planes.
- 4. It is used to drive submarines.
- Radio-active elements were produced by atomic energy for 2<sup>nd</sup> world war, on Nagasaki & Hiroshima.
- It is used to wash dishes and keep food fresh.

### **Disadvantages**

- 1. In war, it is fatal to people.
- 2. Pollution environment air.
- 3. Radioactivity causes damage to crops, animal and human beings.
- 4. Accidents are fatal.

### Solar

- 1. It is used for drying agricultural products.
- 2. It is used for distilling of salt water to obtain salt crystals.
- 3. It is used for heating water.
- 4. It is used for cooking by solar cookers.
- It is used in irrigation by solar water pumps.
- 6. It is used in heating and lighting buildings.
- 7. It is also used for powering satellites in space.

### Disdvantage

It depends on nature, therefore not very reliable.

### Uses of iron during industrial revolution in Europe.

- It was used for making machines for textile industry.
- 2. It was used for making water pipes.
- 3. It was used for making ploughs.
- 4. It was used for making steam engines.
- 5. It was used for building trains, railway lines, ships, wheels, bridges.
- 6. It was used for making farm machinery.
- 7. It was used for making surgical tools e.g. Needles.

#### Uses of steel

- It was used in construction of railway lines, bridges etc.
- 2. It was used for making cars and ships.
- 3. It was used for making machines.
- 4. It was used in reinforcing concrete in building and roofing building.
- 5. It was used for making food containers

- and utensils.
- 6. It was used for making surgical tools e.g. 3. The Water frame. Blades.
- 7. It was used to make farm machinery.

### INDUSTRIALIZATION IN BRITAIN

### Factors for.

- 1. There was high population which provided market
- 2. Trading activities, due to her relationship / accumulated wealth from trade.
- 3. There was good transport network.
- 4. There were merchants and middle men class pressurized the government to adopt measures to favor industrialization.
- 5. Availability of mineral resources coal and Iron ores reserves, coal etc.
- 6. Some of the invention e.g. Steam engine were done in Britain.
- 7. Availability of raw materials.
- 8. Land enclosure ensured labour in industries.
- 9. Availability of capital (wealth)
- 10. Scientific knowledge and skills.
- 11. Political stability and peace / Britain had a strong navy / military.
- 12. Availability of news and information through the developed media.
- 13. Well established banking and insurance system.
- 14. No internal custom barrier (free trade
- 15. Existence of cottage industries.
- 16. Government supports and good will.

### Inventions that revolutionalized textile industry in Britain.

1. The Flying shuttle.

- 2. The Spinning jenny.
- 4. The Spinning mule.
- 5. The Power loom.
- 6. The Cotton gin.
- 7. The Cylindrical calico / The Printing machine.

### **SCIENTIFIC REVOLUTION**

This was the time when many discoveries were made in the field of science.

- Nicholus Copernicus -1473-1543 (Poland)
- Earth and other planets moved around the sun once a year.
- 2. **Galileo Galilei** 1546-1642- (Italy)
- Built the 1st telescope to observe the universe.
- 3. Sir Isaac Newton -1642-1727
- Law of motion and gravity.
- 4. **Antoine Lavoisier** 1743-1794 (France)
- Discovered hydrogen and oxygen elements in air.
- 5. **John Dalton 1766-1844 (Br)**
- Discover Atomic Theory ( Atoms)
- 6. Benjamin Frankline-1706-1790 (USA)
- Stated that lightening is a form of electricity.
- 7. Michael Faraday (1791-1867)
- Invented electricity.
- 8. James Maxwell 1831-1879
- Showed that acceleration of electric charges emite electromagnetic radiation.
- 9. Thomas Edison- 1879 Invented the electric lamp.

### 10. Gugliemo Marconi

- Invented the radio.

### 11. **Heinnah Hertz** 1857-1894

 Showed that accelerated electric charges produce waves of light and other forms of energy.

### 12. Charles Darwin - 1809-1882

- Developed the Evolution theory.

### 13. Charles Lyall - Br

- Said that the earth's surface has changed and the process continues.

### 14. Alexander Graham Bell -1877

- Invented the telephone

### 15. **George Stephenson** – 1781-1848

- Invented railway locomotive.

### 16. Gottlieb Daimler- 1887.

- Invented the petrol vehicle.

### 17. **The Wright brothers** – Wilbour and Ovile – 1903

- Invented the aeroplane.

### Inventions in agriculture.

### 1. **Lord Townshed** – 1674-1738

 Recommended the use of manure to improve soil fertility.

### 2. Sir John Bannet Laws 1843

 Set up super phosphate factory in London to manufacture fertilizer.

### 3. **Justus Von Lie Big** - Germany - 1803-1873

- Set up a modern fertilizer industry.

### 4. Jethro Tull 1702

- Invented the seed drill.

### 5. Cyrus Mc Comic 1837

- Established a factory to produce the reaper.

### 6. Andrew Meikles 1786

- Made the mechanical threasher.

### 7. Nicholas Appert. – France – 1810

- Developed the canning process.

### 8. Carolus Linnaeus - Sweden.

Classified and named animals and plants.

### Inventions in industry.

### 1. James Joule – England -1852

- Proved that heat is a form of energy.

### 2. **James Watt** – 1769

- Improved steam engine.

### 3. **John Kay** – 1733

- Invented the flying shuttle.

### 4. James Hargreaves – 1764

- Invented the spinning jenny.

### 5. Richard Arkwright- 1769

Invented the water frame.

### 6. Samuel Crompton-1779

- Invented the spinning mule.

#### 7. **Thomas Bell**- 1785

- Invented the printing machine.

### 8. Edward Cartwright-1789

- Invented the steam power loom.

### 9. **Eli Whitney** – 1793

- Invented the cotton gin.

### 10. Otto Hahn and Stressman (Germany) -

1831

Discovered nuclear energy.

### Inventions in medicine.

- Adreas Vaesaluis 1514-1564
- Pioneered anatomy (dissection and examination of human corpses)
- 2. William Harvey England 1578-1657
- Discovered the circulation of blood.
- 3. Edward Jenner- England- 1749-1823
- Discovered vaccine for small pox.
- 4. William Morton Am 1819-1868
- Used ether anaesthesia on gums to relieve pain during filling of teeth.
- 5. James Simpson
- Discovered chloroform.
- 6. Louis Pasteur France 1822-1895
- Discovered bacteria and pasteurization.
- 7. **Joseph Lister** 1827-1912
- Discovered antiseptic for surgery.
- 8. Robert Koch Germany 1843
- Differentiated between bacteria for anthrax, TB and Cholera.
- 9. Sir Ronald Ross 1857- 1932
- Discovered that anopheles mosquitoes transmit malaria.
- 10. **Wilhelm Rontgen** 1894 1923
- Discovered X-rays in 1895.
- 11. **Hideyo Noguchi** JP 1876 1928
- Discovered vaccine against yellow fever.
- Researched on cure for syphilis.
- 12. Landsteiner 1881- 1955

- Devised the blood grouping techniques in 1900.
- Facilitated blood transfusion and the storage, eg blood in blood banks for late use.
- 13. Alexander Flemming set 1954
- Discovered penicillin in 1928.
- 14. 1943-Life supporting machine / Kidney dialysis machine has prolonged lives of kidney patients.
- 15. **Jonas Edward Salk** 1961.
- Discovered vaccine for polio & other vaccines, not small pox.
- 16. Dr Christian Bernard (S.A) 1967
- Discovered heart, liver & kidney transplant.
- 17. **1961** Heart Valve replacement was tested on humans.
- 18. 1965 Soft contact lenses were invented.
- 19. **1978** 1<sup>st</sup> test tube babies came into being.
- 20.**1943** Kidney diagnosis machine was invented.
- 21. **2006** 1<sup>st</sup> test tube babies in Kenya.
- 22. Research on cure for HIV / AIDS continues.
- 23. Sir Henry Bessmer (1813- 1898)
- Purified steel by use of blast of air.
- 24. Etinne Lenoir- 1859
- Invented the combustion engine.

### FACTORS THAT FACILITATED SCIENTIFIC REVOLUTION

- Period for renaissance led to longing for knowledge, hence, people developed an interest in research.
- 2. Discovery of printing led to spread of ideas.
- 3. People were faced with many problems in health, food & other basics, hence they had to find solutions.
- 4. Support for science by governments in Europe.
- 5. Overseas travels and discovery of new lands stimulated learning.
- 6. Religion had failed to answer most of the questions, hence people resorted to science as an alternative

### Impact of scientific revolution on agriculture.

- 1. Increased food production.
- 2. European scientific research in agriculture.
- 3. Preservation of food through canning and refrigeration.
- 4. It led to increased population.
- 5. Agriculture has been diversified with new farming methods.
- Farming has been revolutionalised with the establishment of plantation agriculture/large scale.
- 7. Food related diseases due to consumption of chemically treated and stored foods.
- 8. Rise of pest strains which are resistant to pesticides due to continuous use of the same.
- 9. Soil fertility has impoverished.
- 10. Biotechnology is a threat to traditional crops.

### Its impact on industry.

1. Machines have been improved which

- produce goods on large scale.
- 2. Alternative sources of energy have been developed for use in industries.
- 3. Invention of steam engine has improved transportation of raw materials to the industries /products to the market.
- The development of the printing press has enabled people to read and acquire knowledge / information about industrialization.
- 5. There has been loss of lives through industrial accidents.
- 6. Data processing / storage has been improved by use of computers.
- 7. Robots have been developed which have reduced over reliance on human labour / reduced labour costs.
- 8. Development of telecommunication has led to buying / selling of goods on the internet / e-commerce
- Research has enabled industries to recycle waste products in manufacturing usable goods.

### **Others**

- 10. Revolutionalised military technology- by manufacture of dangerous weapons.
- 11. Development of satellites has enhanced exploration in space.

### Its impact on medicine

- Through medical researches/experiments, terminal diseases which used to kill / disfigure people have been reduced/eradicated.
- Advancement in medical Science has helped to reduced suffering/to relieve people from pain.
- 3. It has made surgical operations safer by reducing the number of people who die during and after operations.
- 4. The invention of vaccines has helped to prevent / control the spread of diseases

- leading to increased life expectancy.
- 5. The technology of developing test tube babies has helped childless couples to have children.
- 6. It has led to loss of lives through Geothermal.
- 7. The inventions have made it possible for transplants of body parts such as the heart, liver and kidneys, thereby sustaining human life.
- 8. Advancement/sophisticated medical equipment which perform computer assisted surgery have been developed.
- 9. It has led to job creation for medics/other workers who perform various duties in the health institutions.
- 10. It has led to discovery/manufacture of drugs for treating / curing different diseases.
- 11. Careless dispersal of medical products to loss of accidents and loss of lives.
- 12. Contraceptives have led to immorality.

### Factors undermining scientific revolution in developing countries.

- 1. Shortage of funds to invest in industrialization.
- 2. High level of ignorance and illiteracy.
- 3. Education system does not put more emphasis on Science and research.
- 4. Brain drain.
- 5. Overdependence on donor support.
- 6. Lack of adequate support from governments.
- 7. Shortage of facilities.
- 8. Huge foreign debt which consumes most 5. Political unity of all German states under of the country's resources.
- 9. HIV / AIDS as it weakens the labour force.
- 10. Poverty which affects the market.
- 11. Political instability hence no time for industrialization

### **EMERGENCE OF SELECTED WORLD**

### **INDUSTRIAL POWERS**

### U.S.A

- She was colonized by Britain until 04 / 07 / 1776 when independence was gained.

### Facts that favored industrialization

- 1. Abundant natural resources e.g. iron.
- 2. Availability of sources of energy e.g.
- 3. Enterprising citizens e.g. Bankers.
- 4. Development of transport and communication.
- 5. Availability of raw materials.
- 6. Political stability.
- 7. Government support encouraged research at universities.
- 8. Availability of labour from the high population (Skilled and Unskilled).
- 9. 1st and 2nd world wars.
- 10. Foreign investments, due to capitalism philosophy.

### Germany

### Factors that favored.

- 1. Availability of industrial energy from sources like coal and H.E.P.
- 2. Availability of internal and external market.
- 3. Availability of industrial raw materials like iron ore.
- 4. Availability of capital for industrialization.
- the leadership of Bismarck.
- 6. Acquisition of Alsace and Lorraine from France in 1871 boosted her mineral resources.
- 7. Availability of skilled and unskilled labour from the large population.
- 8. Growth of Banking and insurance in the country.

- 9. Availability of water for industrial use.
- 10. Good transport and communication in form of roads and railway.
- 11. Availability of the government supported 15. Existence of cottage / local industries industry and encouraged German entrepreneurs.
- 12. Enterprising nature of the Germans.
- 13. The establishment of the Zollverein, removed trade barriers and led to free trade and

economic trade.

### **JAPAN**

### Factors that favored.

- 1. Long periods of political stability.
- 2. After WW2, American stepped in with financial & technical know- how to stop her from falling to communism.
- 3. Japanese work for life / Culture of hard work / Enterprising citizens who were willing to invest in industry.
- 4. Support from the government by inviting foreign expatriates.
- 5. Highly developed renewable hydroelectric power from large rivers.
- 6. Availability of Skilled and unskilled labour.
- 7. Goods transport and communication network.
- 8. Japanese government invited foreign investors to invest in the country.

#### Others

- 9. Geographical factors as she had a very small part suitable for agriculture.
- 10. Government made education compulsory and encouraged research after the WW2
- 11. People were encouraged to study abroad, hence technological development.
- 12. Financial support for industrialization

- 13. Availability of raw materials.
- 14. Japanese goods are of high quality, hence marketable.
- which were not completely destroyed by WW's.

### INDUSTRIALIZATION IN THE 3<sup>RD</sup> WORD COUNTRIES.

### Problems encountered.

- 1. Long periods of colonization.
- 2. Poor transport and communication.
- 3. Shortage of capital.
- 4. Poor technology.
- 5. Low literacy level.
- 6. Tough competition, even from developed countries
- 7. Protectionist policies, adopted prevent private enterprises and foreign investment.
- 8. Poverty hence small domestic market.
- 9. Political instability.
- 10. Poor disaster management strategies.
- 11. Lack of skilled personnel / Brain drain.
- 12. Poor energy supply.
- 13. Most resources are under-exploited.
- 14. Peoples' preference to imported goods.

### **BRAZIL**

- 9 She's the 5<sup>th</sup> largest courtly in the world after Canada, China, USA and Russia.
- She attained her independence from Portugal in 1882.
- She then progressed in petroleum, motor vehicle, air craft electricity industries.

#### Problems faced.

- 1. High poverty level, hence low purchasing power.
- 2. Inability to exploit natural resources due

- to less population in some areas e.g. Southern region.
- 3. Competition from the already industrialized countries.
- 4. Monopoly of resources by multinational companies in Brazil, thus the government is not able to utilize them for industrial use.
- Huge foreign debt, thus spending a lot of money paying/ servicing the foreign dept.
- 6. Poor technology which hinders effective exploitation of resources for industrialization.
- 7. Most of the investors are from the Western countries & they repatriate all the profit back to their countries.
- 8. HIV / Aids which clears the energetic people, thus spending a lot of resources on managing the affected.

### Factors that favored.

- Availability of both skilled and unskilled labour from the large population.
- Free trade between Brazil and other countries provided her with external market which enabled her to supplement her local raw materials with the imported, foreign exchange / market.
- 3. Availability of enough natural resources e.g. Coal which provided raw materials for industrialization.
- 4. Improved transport and communication facilitated transport activities- raw materials and products.
- 5. Establishment of banks which facilitated the provision of loans to people who invested in industry.
- 6. The heavy influx of foreigners brought in foreign capital which was invested in industries.
- 7. Government support.
- 8. Readily available HEP and coal for energy in industries.

- 9. Application of sound 5 year plan which improved the industrial sector.
- 10. Obtained foreign aid from other countries and organization.
- 11. Improved farming methods, hence reliable food.
- 12. Political stability by the good leaders.

### South Africa

∋ She gained independence from the South African Boers in 1994.

### Factors that favored her industrialization.

- Availability of mineral / natural resources e.g. Iron which provided raw materials for industrialization.
- 2. Availability of both internal and external **market** for her goods.
- 3. Industrial goods from South Africa are of **good quality**, hence can compete with those of the developed countries.
- 4. The high population provided both skilled and unskilled labour.
- 5. Development of **many sources of energy** to provide power for industrialization e.g. HEP. And the supply of coal.
- 6. Good **transport network** boosted the transportation of raw materials and products, including Air.
- 7. Availability of **capital** from trade of other materials like minerals.
- 8. **Political stability**, especially after Apartheid.
- Government support through the adoption of sound / favorable policies which promote industrialization e.g. Tariffs on imports.

### Challenges / Problems.

- 1. Long period of Apartheid rule.
- 2. Competition from more developed countries.

- 3. Rampant industrial strikes.
- 4. High poverty levels.
- 5. High level of insecurity.
- 6. HIV / AIDS / shortage of labour.
- 7. Discriminatory apartheid rule.

### **INDIA**

∋ She was colonized by Britain from 1750-1947

### Factors that favored

- She had good industrial based and cottage industry.
- 2. Availability of raw materials e.g. Minerals like coal.
- 3. Availability of energy from various sources like coal and HEP.
- 4. Good transport and communication network.
- 5. Availability of funds from trade.
- 6. Favorable technical and scientific education which produced scientific experts.
- 7. Establishment of banks which provided loans to prospective investors.
- 8. Support from the government through good policies e.g. 5year plan and also protective tariffs were applied to protect home industries.
- Political stability which has created/ provided a favourable environment for investment in industry.
- 10. Large population which provided market and labor.

### Government policies which facilitated industrialization in India.

- 1. Promotion of technical and Scientific education.
- 2. Restriction on imported goods.
- 3. Development of heavy industries by state government plans.

- 4. Emphasis on industrialization in the 5 year plans.
- 5. Encouragement of foreign investment in the country.

### Challenges / Problems.

- Competition from already developed countries.
- 2. High population strains the government allocations to the agricultural sector.
- 3. High poverty levels.
- 4. Inadequate transport and communication infrastructure.
- 5. Natural calamities e.g. Drought and floods.
- 6. Political conflicts with Pakistan and civil unrest
- 7. HIV / AIDS.

### **TOPIC 8.URBANIZATION:**

This means – the process by which people are attracted to live in towns or large settlement.

### Early urbanization - in Africa

Some of the early urban centres in Africa include Cairo, Meroe / Merowe and Kilwa.

### Factors that favored early urban centres in Africa.

- 1. Along river valleys for water, hence large settlements.
- 2. Areas with fertile soils / Agricultural areas
- 3. Areas with good sheltered / Protected areas.
- 4. Areas with a variety of trading activities
- 5. Others were established along main

- communication / Transport routes.
- 6. Other centres started around administrative areas.
- 7. Some centres also developed around mining area.

### Factors that led to early urbanization in pre--colonial Africa

- Trading activities between different communities led to the development of trading centres which later became towns.
- Discovery of crop farming led to the development of farming centres which attracted large population and later became towns.
- 3. Centres that were used for religious activities later developed in to towns.
- Regions that had adequate security attracted population concentration leading to development of towns / secure places.
- 5. Places that were used for administrative functions developed in to towns.
- 6. Places along the coast where ships stopped for supplies developed in to towns / habours.
- 7. Mining activities attracted settlements which later became towns.
- 8. Places where water was available for use attracted settlements and later became towns.
- Existence of trade routes accessing many places / some towns developed at cross roads.
- Centres of learning like Alexandria and Timbuktu developed in to urban centres / educational centres.
- 11. Individual interests of some leaders
- 12. Areas with fertile soils attracted settlement, hence grew in to towns.

## Why early urban centers in Africa were located along rivers.

- 1. Plenty of water for domestic use.
- 2. Fertile soils along the river valley was necessary for farming.
- 3. Easy transport along the river.
- 4. Irrigation for farming was easy with water from the rivers.
- 5. Plenty of water from the rivers for industrial purpose.

### Factors that caused decline of urban centers in pre-colonial Africa

- 1. Collapse of state kingdoms e.g. Kush
- 2. Collapse of trade which eventually denied them revenue.
- 3. Outbreak of diseases which affected both people and livestock.
- 4. Stiff competition from other towns.
- 5. Exhaustion of minerals like gold in Sofala
- 6. Change in transport routes as the new ones by-passed the old towns and diverted trade

### to other towns.

- 7. Shortage of water / drought in some towns made people to migrate to other areas.
- 8. European colonization of Africa which crushed some towns during wars of resistance.
- War of conquests also led to the collapse of some centres like Gedi.

### Merowe / Meroe

- Was on the banks of River Nile in Sudan
- Was founded in 650BC.

### Factors for the growth of Merowe

- 1. Availability of natural resources especially iron ore / Iron smelting. (MAIN)
- 2. It was located strategically at the intersection of different transport &

communication routes.

- 3. It was forested, hence abundant wood fuel.
- 4. Fertile soils, hence agricultural production was high.
- 5. Trading activities around the area attracted large settlements.
- 6. Religious centre, hence temples were constructed.

### Effects of its growth

- 1. Meroitic language developed.
- 2. New architectural developments.
- 3. Iron and other industries developed.

### Its functions

- It was an iron-working, hence industrial centre
- 2. It was a mining centre for iron ore.
- 3. It was also a religions centre.
- 4. It was a trading centre.
- 5. It was an administrative and political centre.
- 6. It was a transport centre.

### Problems she experienced

- Rise of Axum Kingdom in Ethiopia which denied her access to Red Sea.
- 2. Increasing desertification of the region which affected agricultural activities.
- 3. It was faced with external attacks eg by Axum.
- 4. There was depletion of minerals eg iron.

### Cairo

Was founded in 969 AD

### Factors for her growth

- Availability of water from Nile for domestic use and transport.
- 2. It was situated in a fairly flat area that allowed territorial expansion of the town.
- 3. The fertile soil along the Nile valley led to production of enough food for the population.
- 4. Reliable transport by railway and road.
- 5. Culture -which attracted migrants from the rural areas.
- Her industry which was expanded when food processing plants & construction works were established.
- Was a centre of education & medicine, and this attracted population from all directions.
- 8. The opening of the Aswan high dam encouraged industrialization in the town, thus expansion.
- 9. Opening of Suez Canal in 1869 opened a new trade route which was used by thousands of Europeans.
- International trade, as the other countries were disrupted by the world wars.

### **Functions**

- It is the capital of Egypt and political centre of Arab world.
- 2. It is a transport and communication centre for North Africa, Middle East and Central Africa.
- 3. It is a trade centre.
- 4. It is a recreational centre-stadium and entertainment halls are based there.
- 5. It is a historical and tourist centre, housing Egyptian civilization.
- 6. It is the country's administrative centre.
- 7. It is a residential town with many people staying around.
- 8. It is an industrial centre as many industries like textile, food processing etc are located there.

- 9. It is a cultural centre, with theatres where plays are performed.
- 10. It is an educational centre with universities around the town.
- 11. It is a religious centre with religious offices and buildings like mosques.

### Problems faced

- Overcrowding resulting from high population.
- 2. Increased crime rate due to unemployment.
- 3. Traffic congestions.
- 4. Unemployment due to high population.
- 5. Inadequate food supply.
- 6. Pollution of water, Air and noise.
- 7. Poor housing with the construction of slums to catter for the low earners and the unemployed.

## Why early urban centers in Egypt were established along River Nile.

- 1. Availability of water for transport.
- 2. Water from the river for domestic / industrial use.
- 3. The Valley had fertile soil for farming / availability of food.
- 4. Nile valley had cool temperatures which encouraged settlement.
- 5. Vegetation along the river provided building materials.

#### Kilwa

It was founded in 10<sup>th</sup> century.

### Factors for her growth

 Strategic position which attracted merchants as it was convenient stopping there.

- 2. Trade especially in gold from Sofala as they were close (MAIN).
- 3. Influence from the Persians with urban cultures
- 4. Attractive and great buildings e.g. the great Mosque.
- 5. Good leadership by the sultans of Shirazi dinasity.

### **Functions**

- 1. It was a trading centre as many commercial activities took place in and around the town.
- 2. It was a defense centre as several hiding places were constructed for use during war.
- 3. It was a religions centre as mosques were constructed around the town.
- 4. It was an administrative centre, housing some administrative offices.

### **EARLY URBANIZATION IN EUROPE**

### Factors that favored rapid urbanization in Europe in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

- 1. Rapid industrialization which attracted large numbers of people.
- Increased mining activities which attracted people to settle around.
- Availability of capital for investment / Existence of rich people who were willing to invest.
- 4. Enclosure created the landlessness that migrated to urban centres for settlement.
- 5. Expansion of transport and communication.
- Expansion of trading activities which attracted people to settle and invest.

### Results of urbanization in Europe during the 19<sup>th</sup> C.

 Overcrowding in urban centres as many people came for jobs and services.

- 2. Limited social amenities e.g. schools which could not accommodate the growing urban population.
- 3. Environmental pollution from gases and noise from the industries.
- 4. Rapid industrialization as many rich people moved in to invest.
- 5. Increased crime rate due to joblessness and poverty.
- 6. Expansion of commercial activities e.g. banking.
- 7. Expansion of agriculture as farmers tried to take care of the increasing population. 3. It is a religions centre housing some
- 8. Increase in mining activities with new minerals on demand.
- 9. Social interaction between different communities, especially in urban areas.
- 10. Migration of people to the urban for employment and other services.
- 11. Expansion of transport and communication to facilitate movement of 1. High crime rate due to unemployment goods and people.
- 12. Expansion of trade as demand and supply increased.

#### **Athens**

One of the earliest cities in Greece.

### Factors for the growth of Athens

- 1. It was surrounded by mountains and the sea, hence making it secure.
- 2. Education / Centre of learning.
- 3. Trading and commercial activities.
- 4. Religion / Cultural centre as temples were built around, thus attracting settlements.
- 5. Fertile valleys provided enough food from the fertile soils.
- 6. It had good port facilities which facilitated docking of water vessels.
- 7. Was an administrative centre. It was also an administrative centre, thus attracting large settlements of people.

- 8. Availability of water for domestic and commercial use.
- 9. Creation and maintenance of strong cavalry, infantry and navy provided security and defence to the city.

### **Functions of Athens.**

- 1. It is a centre of culture as plays are performed there.
- 2. It is a centre of education as in houses colleges and universities
- churches and religious offices.
- 4. It is a sports centre and some games competitions are conducted there eg Olympic games.

### **Problems**

- and poverty.
- 2. Shortage of social amenities due to increasing population in the town.
- 3. Congestion due to rural-urban migration.
- 4. Fast spread of diseases due to overcrowding / congestion.
- 5. Unemployment due to uncontrolled rural -urban migration.

### Reasons for its decline.

- 1. Outbreak of war between Sparta and Athens.
- 2. Plague outbreak in 429 BC which led to lose of lives.
- 3. The city was burnt down by Sparta.
- 4. It was conquered by Macedonia under the leadership of Philip and his son Alexander the Great.

### Characteristics of Greek city states

- 1. Built of hills for security
- 2. Highly populated

- 3. Each city had a palace.
- 4. Had residential houses
- 5. Politically independent of each other.
- 6. Had a common religion, language and culture
- 7. Had many temples.
- 8. Had open air markets

### London

### Capital city of England

### Factors for its growth

- Location at the banks of River Thames thus easy access.
- 2. Industrialization e.g. textiles.
- 3. Trading activities.
- 4. Influx of people from rural Britain and other parts of Europe.
- 5. Early establishment of cultural activities like theatre sports which attracted people.
- 6. Activities of the Romans when they set up administrative and commercial activities there.
- 7. Good transport and communication network.
- 8. Availability of finance from the banks.
- Centre of government businesses / administrative.

### **Functions**

- It is a It is a transport and communication centre-roads, airports etc,
- 2. Political and administrative centre with administration offices.
- 3. It is a commercial / trading centre with markets and shops.
- 4. It is an industrial centre with industries based in and around the town
- 5. It is an educational centre with

- universities and colleges.
- 6. It is a tourist centre with some prominent buildings and activities.
- 7. It is historical centre with stored material culture in museums.

### Problems encountered.

- 1. Poverty -as the poor were exploited by the rich.
- 2. Rural-urban migration as the people went to seek employment.
- 3. Poor housing with the growth of slums for the poor.
- 4. High crime rate as the poor and the unemployed sought an alternative.
- 5. Unemployment due to high rate of population growth.
- 6. Pollution of environment by the high population and human activities.

### MODERN URBAN CENTRES IN AFRICA

#### Nairobi

## Factors behind it growth /why it was picked as a railway depot in 19<sup>th</sup> Century.

- Adequate and reliable water from Nairobi river.
- 2. Level ground for easy construction work.
- 3. Location at the middle of Mombasa and Lake Victoria for transport.
- 4. Cool temperatures which favored European settlement
- 5. Ideal to access the west across the River valley.
- 6. Trading activities attracted many people in the area.
- 7. Transfer of colonial government Headquarters in 1907.
- 8. Political stability in the country attracted foreign investors.
- 9. Cool climate suitable for farming and European settlement in the surrounding

areas.

### **Functions**

- 1. It has the government's administrative headquarter.
- 2. It is a commercial and trading centre.
- 3. It is also a financial centre, with the central bank housed there.
- 4. It is a transport and communication centre.
- 5. It is the headquarter for international bodies e.g. KQ, UNEP etc
- 6. It is a tourist centre.

### It problems

- Unemployment due to high rate of population growth.
- 2. Poor housing / Slums for the poor and the unemployed.
- 3. Inadequate social services and facilities.
- Congestion on roads / traffic jam due to high number of vehicles with poor state of roads.
- 5. Poor town planning, hence poor drainage and flooding during rain.
- 6. Pollution from industries and vehicles and other human activities.
- 7. High number of street families.
- 8. Water shortage due to high population growth and illegal connections of pipes.
- 9. High rate of HIV / AIDS infection resulting from immoral activities like prostitution and homosexuality.
- 10. High crime rate / insecurity due to unemployment and poverty.
- 11. High population due to increased ruralurban migration in search for jobs and other services.

### Solutions.

New housing projects are being developed.

- 2. Social facilities are being increased.
- 3. Rail transport has been re-introduced
- 4. Expansion of informal sector e.g. employment in Jua kali.
- 5. Rehabilitation of street families.
- 6. New water projects have been developed.
- 7. Water company has been privatized.
- 8. Organizations are being formed to address HIV / AIDS.
- Civic education is being provided on AIDS / HIV.

### **Johannesburg**

### Factors influencing

- Food from the agriculturally rich neighborhood.
- 2. Its location-on plain (veld) which made construction very easy.
- 3. Availability of coal which provided energy for mines, industries and homes.
- Other minerals like iron ore and diamond.
- 5. Water from Vaal River / Clean water supply for building and transport
- 6. Discovery of Gold in Witwatersrand.

#### **Function**

- 1. It is a transport and communication centre with roads and railways.
- 2. It is an industrial and manufacturing centre with some industries in the town
- It is a financial centre with many banks.
- 4. It is an education centre with several universities in the town.

### **Problems**

- Large gap between the rich Europeans and the poor Blacks.
- 2. Industrial pollution is high in the town.

- 3. HIV / AIDS has afflicted many people in town.
- 4. Poor housing / Shanties / Slums in the town due to shortage of housing.
- 5. High rate of unemployment within the
- 6. Highest crime rate within the town.
- 7. High rate of poverty among the people in the town.
- 8. Congestion in the city due to ruralurban migration.
- 9. There is still discrimination against the blacks by the Europeans thus conflicts.
- 11. Negative attitude towards adherence to government policies.
- 12. Inefficient administrative system.

### **Solutions**

- 1. Better housing estates
- 2. Creation of AIDS awareness.
- 3. Creation of more job opportunities.

### Impact of agrarian and industrial developments on urbanization.

- 1. Enabled people to lead a settled life.
- 2. It created landlessness, thus migration of people to urban centres to work in industries.
- 3. Development of mines attracted more human settlement.
- 4. Increased food production, and consequently trade developed and market centres attracted many people.
- 5. Financial industry developed in urban centres due to agrarian and industrial activities, which attracted many people.
- 6. Some ports developed as towns to export agricultural and mineral products.
- 7. Farm mechanization in the agricultural sector displaced labourers who then migrated to urban centres to look for jobs.

- 8. Some towns grew as food processing centres.
- 9. Produced raw materials for industries, thus further expansion of towns.

### **TOPIC 9.ORGANIZATION OF AFRICAN** SOCIETIES IN THE 19TH C

### **BAGANDA**

### Factors of growth

- 1. Abundant rainfall and suitable soils, thus sound economy based on Agric.
- 2. Their conquests earned them territory, human, animal and natural resources.
- 10. Expensive / inadequate medical facilities. 3. Able leaders who were able to unite the people.
  - 4. Centralised government which reduced chances of conflict of interest.
  - 5. Standing army and navy which was strong and loyal for defense and territorial expansion.
  - 6. Decline of Bunyoro Kitara kingdom created a political vacuum to be filled by Buganda.
  - 7. The Kingdom was small & united, thus easy to hold together for easy administration & stability.
  - 8. Contact with the coastal trading communities e.g. Arabs and Swahili in long distance trade which enabled them to gain guns for defense.
  - 9. Ganda tradition which divided labour made everyone to be responsible.
  - 10. High population provided enough labour and soldiers.
  - 11. Annexation of Biddu, Kyagwe and Busoga by Buganda increased her sources of slaves, iron, ivory and livestock, thus strengthening the economy.
  - 12. The neighboring Kingdoms eg. Toro, Ankole & Busoga were weak, and hence offered no challenge
  - 13. They welcome the British in the 19<sup>th</sup> Century, who helped them to expand.

### Political organization

- 1. The Kingdom was highly centralized under Kabaka.
- 2. Kabaka was also the commander in-chief 4. He appointed and fired senior officials of the armed forces.
- 3. Kabaka had the power to hire and fire senior government officials.
- 4. Kabaka appointed a council of ministers who assisted him, thus Katikiro / Mugema (Prime Minister), Omulamuzi (Chief

Justice) and Omuwanika (Treasurer).

- 5. There was Lukiiko (Parliament) which advised the Kabaka.
- 6. The Kingdom was divided into Counties / sazas ruled / headed by saza chiefs. Their offices were initially inherited, but later appointed by the Kabaka.
- 7. Sazas were further sub-divided into Gombolola under Gombolola chiefs.
- 8. The Gombololas were subdivided in to divisions called Miluka under Miluka chiefs.
- 9. Kabaka's position was hereditary.
- 10. There were minor chiefs in charge of clans (Bataka) whose children were rewarded

by serving the Kabaka.

11. There were governors who were also appointed by the Kabaka for the vassal states.

called Batangole

12. The Kingdom had a standing army for defense and expansion of the kingdom.

#### Roles of Bataka.

- 1. Guarding the clan's land.
- 2. Collecting tax.
- 3. Maintaining law and order in the clan.
- 4. Settling minor disputes.

### Roles of Kabaka

1. He was the head of the traditional religion-Lubaale.

- 2. He bestowed honors to people who gave exceptional service to Kingdom
- 3. He was the supreme judge / head of the judiciary / final court of appeal.
- eg Saza chiefs.

### Others

- 1. He was the commander-in-chief of the armed forces.
- 2. He controlled trade
- 3. He was the head of government.
- 4. He was the chief priest as he presided over all religious activities.

### How centralization of authority contributed to the growth of Buganda kingdom.

- 1. It enhanced effective control of the kingdom.
- 2. It promoted the control of other traditional leaders e.g. clan heads, thus brought unity.
- 3. It enhanced loyalty to one single leader.
- 4. It led to emergence of able Kabakas, who propelled the kingdom from strength to strength.
- 5. Minimal succession disputes.

### **Roles of Lukiiko**

- It advised Kabaka.
- 2. It represent people's needs to Kabaka.
- 3. It acted as court of Appeal / It advised on disputes.
- 4. It directed the collection of taxes / how the wealth of the kingdom would be spent.
- 5. It help Kabaka in administration.
- 6. It made laws for the kingdom.
- 7. It checked the activities of the government / checking on the

executive.

8. It debated on issues that affected the kingdom.

### Functions of Saza chiefs.

- 1. They maintained law and order.
- 2. They collect taxes.
- 3. They recruited men for military service.
- 4. They settle disputes / They tried cases in courts.
- 5. They were members of the Lukiiko / They advised the Kabaka

### **Economic organization**

- The Kingdom economy was based on agriculture with
  - the growing of bananas as staple food.
- 2. They made canoes / boats for fishing and for use by the navy.
- 3. The Kingdom Participated in long distance trade.
- 4. They practiced iron-working.
- 5. They made crafts e.g. baskets / They manufactured bark clothes.
- 6. There was salt mining and iron at Biddu.
- 7. They fished on Lake Victoria
- 8. They kept livestock e.g. cattle.
- 9. There was also hunting and gathering.

### Social organization

- They were based on clan, each having its traditions from generation to generation.
- 2. They fell in classes e.g. Royal class (King and Royal chiefs) and Bakopi (peasants). There was little contact between the two classes.
- 3. They believed in both good and bad spirits.
- 4. Boys were educated by the fathers

and uncles, while the girls by their mothers and aunts.

- Kabaka headed traditional religion lubaale.
- 9. They believed in many gods e.g. Katonda creator

Kibuuka – god of war or thunder

Mukasa – god of fertility

Kiwanuka – god of lightening

Nawagenyi – god of drought 10. They had religious leaders e.g. Kabaka 11. Shrines were constructed and preserved for worship.

- 12. There were sorcerers (Balopo)
- 13. Historians kept live activities and events of the royal family at the Royal court.
- 14. They adopted Islam later and others to Christianity.
- 15. The Kabaka was at the top of the social organization with religious

and judicial portfolios.

- 14. The Kabaka was the wealthiest person and his property included land and large herds of cattle.
- 17. The peasants who were the majority cleared land and served in the armed forces.
- 18. There was division of labour as men cleared land while ladies planted and weeded.

#### Shona

They are Bantus from Zimbabwe

### Political organization

- They were ruled by a King (Mwene Mutapa) who had absolute authority over the subjects.
- 2. The King's position was hereditary so as

to reduce succession disputes.

- 3. The King was assisted by several people Social Organization. eg the court steward.
- 4. There was an advisory council whose work was to advise the king.
- 5. The Kingdom was divided into provinces under provincial / lesser chiefs who were directly answerable to the king.
- 6. The provinces were divided in to chiefdoms ruled by chiefs.
- 7. Under the chiefs there were head men who were in charge of the villages.
- 8. They had a standing army whose main duty was to defend / expand the empire.
- 9. The king was a simbol of unity as he was semi-divine.
- 10. There existed priests who acted as spies for the king.

### King's assistants

- Head cook
- 2. Head Drummer
- 3. Senior son in-law
- 4. King's sister / Emperor's sister / Queen sister
- 5. Gate keeper / Chancellor / Door keeper
- 6. Queen mother
- 7. Head of Army
- 8. Nine principal wives / Wives of the king
- 9. Treasurer

### **Economic organization**

- 1. They cultivated land and grew crops e.g. millet and Cassava.
- 2. They Kept livestock like cattle.
- 3. They fished along rivers and lakes.
- 4. They mined gold.
- 6. They participated in the long distance trade.
- 7. They made crafts e.g. bark clothes.
- 8. They hunted and gathered for wild animals and fruits.

- 1. Mwene mutapa was the Chief priest and he was regarded as a semi-divine king.
- 2. They believed in a supreme creator God whom they called Mwari.
- 3. They believed in both good and bad spirits: Vadzimu(family spirits) Mhondoro (Clan spirits) and Chamiruka (National Spirit).
- 4. They had intermediaries (Svikiro) who was a departed family or clan member.
- 5. Chamiruka settled clan disputes and protected the clans (community)
- 6. Rozwi clan provided priests who presided over religious ceremonies and sacrifices.
- 7. They were divided in to clans whose names were coined from animals like monkeys, whose meat was never consumed.
- 8. They lived in circular stone buildings.
- 9. They respected the elders for peace when they die.
- 10. They had sacred places for worship eg Shrines, where sacrifices were offered.
- 11. They had a royal fire that kept burning in the king's court. This fire symbolized unity among the people and authority of the king.

### Asante / Ashanti

They are Akan-speaking people from Southern Ghana.

### Factors for growth

- 5. They iron-worked for weapons and tools. 1. Support from the other communities as they were related / unity among the several states that emerged around Kumasi.
  - 2. They participated in international and local trade which brought them wealth.

- 3. They had able leaders e.g. Osei Tutu
- They had a strong agricultural base which ensured them food throughout the year / The region in which it was situated was good for farming, hence reliable food supply.
- 5. They had a centralized government which ensured no political conflicts.
- 6. Odwira festival was used to create harmony in the kingdom.
- 7. They had a large Standing army / Military strength based on acquisition of guns and gun powder.
- 8. They had a common culture within the kingdom and the Golden Stool which ensured unity.
- 9. Need to free themselves from Denkyra rule
- They were brave and proud, and ready to do anything to keep their kingdom strong.

### How trade led to the growth of the Asante Kingdom

- 1. From the trade, they acquired revenue to sustain the army.
- 2. Weapons were obtained from the trade to expand the kingdom.
- 3. The wealth from the trade boosted the fame of the king.
- 4. Need for goods to export encouraged the king to conguer more territories.
- 5. The king used the wealth from the trade to reward loyal provincial rulers.

### **Political Organization**

- They were a centralized state led by Asantehene; and were grouped into three divisions: nuclear (Kumasi), Amatoo (outside states) and the conquered states.
- 2. Asantehene was the commander inchief of the armed forces.

- 3. The conquered states were ruled by their kings but treated as provinces of Asante. Asantehene appointed representative in each conquered state.
- The Asantehene ruled with the help of a confederacy of kings (Omanhene), Confederacy council. They took an oath of allegiance to ensure loyalty to the Asantehene.
- 5. The Omanhene represented the Asantehene in the conquered states / Omanhene were autonomous but were expected to pay tribute to the Asantehene and contribute soldiers in times of war.
- 6. They had a standing army for external defense.
- 7. They had a Golden Stool introduced to the by Asantehene Osei Tutu in the 18<sup>th</sup> Century, and it symbolized unity.
- They had a well-established judicial / court system based at Kumasi, headed by Asantehene.
   The Omanhenes were given power to try minor cases in the provinces.
- 9. The annual Odwira festival strengthened solidarity and nationalism in the kingdom.

#### Roles of Asantehene.

- 1. He was the head of the kingdom.
- 2. He was the chief priest / witnessed the swearing in of appointed officials.
- 3. He sat on the Golden stool which was a symbol of unity.
- 4. He appointed governors of vessel states.
- 5. He chaired the Odwira festival.
- 6. He was the supreme judge.

### Functions of Omanhene.

- 1. He had the right to declare war against another Omanhene.
- 2. He recognized the right of Asantehene

- to impose levies.
- 3. He attended Odwira festival.
- 4. He granted citizens the right to appeal to the highest court in Kumasi.

**NB/** The Omanhene used Black Stool as a symbol of authority.

### **Economic Organization**

- 1. They traded with their neighbours.
- 2. They mined gold.
- 3. They grew crops like yams.
- 4. They kept livestock the cattle.
- 5. They hunted and gathered for wild animals and fruits.
- 6. They were blacksmiths and they made tools and weapons..
- 7. They made crafts like basketry and pottery
- 8. They practiced fishing along rivers and lakes.

### Social organization

- The kingdom composed of many communities who spoke the Akan language.
- 2. They were organized in clans made up of related families.
- 3. Marriage was exogamous.
- 4. Inheritance of property was matrilineal.
- 5. The community was bound together by the Golden Stool.
- 6. They had an annual festival (Odwira) held at Kumasi to honour the ancestors.
- 7. They were divided into social classes / stratification.
- 8. The kings were regarded as semi-divine / religious leaders.
- 9. They were polytheists / worshipped many gods.
- 10. The ancestors mediated between the people and the gods.
- 11. They believed in a supreme God called Onyame.

### Importance of the Golden Stool.

- 1. It symbolized / promoted unity.
- 2. It symbolized the power of the king.
- 3. It contained the soul or spirit of the Asante people.
- 4. It was a symbol of administration and royal regalia.
- 5. It was used by the Asantehene to wield much respect among the Oyoko clan.

### Importance of Odwira festival

- 1. It promoted unity among the people.
- 2. It provided an opportunity for the kings to settle disputes.
- 3. It brought the kings together to pledge loyalty / tribute to the Asantehene.
- 4. It provided an opportunity for the kings to honour the dead.

### \*LATEST HIGH SCHOOL NOTES\* \*0714497530\* (Mr Isaboke)

Maths form 1-4

English form 1-4

kiswahili form 1-4

chemistry form 1--4

Biology form 1-4

Physics form 1--4

Agriculture form 1--4

**Business form 1--4** 

Cre form 1--4

History form 1--4

Computer form 1--4

Geography form 1--4

Homescience f1--4

I.R.E studies f1-4

French notes

Setbooks guides

Primary school notes

**KCSE Topicals** 

\*CPA\* tuitioning

Updated \*CPA,CIFA ATD\* KASNEB

notes

Updated \*CPS,CICT,ATD\* KASNEB

**Notes** 

Updated \*ICT,IT,ACCA,CFA\* notes

Forex trading guidance

\*CCTV\* installation &Networking

services

Online services

\*\_All the materials are in soft copy
and we'll updated

Text /call or WhatsApp \*0714497530
to get your copy\_\*

\*https://wa.me/254714497530\*

# TOPIC 10.EUROPEAN INVASION OF AFRICA AND THE PROCESS OF COLONIZATION.

### SCRAMBLE AND PARTITION OF AFRICA

 This means the period when the European powers rushed for and divided Africa amongst themselves.

### Methods used

- Divide and rule policy, thus Africans were tricked to turn against each other in order to weaken them.
- 2. Deception / Treachery / Luring Africans with European goods.
- 3. Military force / conquest / expeditions.
- Signing of treaties and agreements / Collaborations.
  - There were two types: Partition and Protectionist treaties.
- 5. Chartered trading Companies.

### Causes.

### **∍** Economic

- 1. To look for market for their products following industrialization.
- Following the industrialization, they generated a lot of wealth and there was need for a place to invest their surplus capital.
- 3. They were looking for minerals or metals, which were believed to be

- existing in Africa.
- 4. Most parts of Africa had good climate and fertile soils suitable for farming and other economic activities.
- European traders in Africa asked for protection from their mother countries upon facing competition from the African merchants and those from other European countries.
- 6. They wanted to stop slave trade and introduce legitimate trade.

### **∍** Political

- Bismarck and the rise of Germany which changed the balance of power in Europe, as countries rushed for colonies to redress.
- After France's defeat in the Franco-Prussian war of 1870, she decided to look for colonies for compensation, as Germany wanted to make her forget the defeat / militarism.
- Public opinion in Europe was for acquisition of colonies e.g. Through press.
- Nationalism/Imperialism, as countries competed to acquire many colonies to prove that they were powerful.
- 5. French activities in West Africa to acquire colonies encouraged other countries to join the scramble.

### → Strategic

- Control of River Nile and its sources could facilitate European activities in Africa / Egyptian question.
- River Congo was also attractive, as it was believed that the area had minerals. (French activities in the Congo and West Africa).
- 3. Portugal, Belgium and France claimed for Congo, Britain & Germany desired for colonies in the region / King

Leopold's activities in the Congo.

### → Social

- Campaign against slave trade / Humanitarian factor.
- 2. Christian revival in Europe in 18<sup>th</sup>
  Century- as the Christians felt it was
  their responsibility to spread the faith to
  other parts of the world / to protect
  missionaries.
- 3. Racial superiority felt by the Europeans, thus they wanted to spread their civilization / Paternalism.
- 4. The European powers wanted to settle the surplus population.
- 5. Role of influential individuals in European e.g. William Mackinnon and Dr David Livingstone.

#### **Others**

- 6. The challenge of the spread of Islam which the European missionaries wanted to stop.
- 7. There was need to spread social reforms in Africa, as the Europeans considered some practices in Africa as in human e.g. human sacrifice.
- 8. Social misfits in Europe were to be resettled in Africa.
- Mass media also influenced by publishing supportive information.

## Reasons why Egypt was of strategic importance to Britain.

- 1. Due to the opening of the Suez canal that opened to Indian Ocean for trade.
- 2. Provided a short route to India and the Far East.

### **∍ Pull factor**:

Africa had minerals, but due to frequent civil wars, diseases, they were weak.

The good natural harbors.
The navigable rivers.
Well-developed trade with trade routes and centres in the interior.
Disunity among African communities.
Weakness of African communities due to lack of sophisticated weapons, skilled fighters, and diseases, drought & famine.

### Roles of explorers

- They argued that Africa was dark, and hence needed light.
- 2. They increased the Geographical knowledge of African interior in Europe.
- They made known to Europe what the Africa interior could offer e.g. labor, minerals.
- 4. They opened up the interior of Africa for other groups.
- 5. They appealed to their government to take up control of the interior of Africa.

#### Roles of missionaries

- 1. They pacified the Africans.
- 2. They called upon their mother countries for protection.

### Roles of traders

- 1. They signed treaties with Africa rulers.
- 2. They set up colonial administration.
- 3. They provided cheap administrative capital.
- 4. They interfered with local politics.
- 5. They appealed for help from other countries.
- 6. They invested heavily, hence made colonization inevitable.

## European activities in Africa in the 19<sup>th</sup> Century.

- 1. They were involved in trade.
- 2. They were spreading Christianity.
- 3. They were involved in exploration.
- 4. They were establishing settlements.
- 5. They were signing imperial treaties / establishing colonial rule.
- 6. They were mining.
- 7. They were involved in farming.
- 8. They were involved in stamping out slave trade.
- 9. They were involved in spreading legitimate trade.
- 10. They were involved in establishing medical / health centres.

### How industrialization in Europe contributed to scramble for colonies in Africa.

- European countries needed markets for their manufactured goods
- 2. European countries needed raw materials to feed their industries
- 3. European countries needed areas to invest their surplus capital
- 4. European countries needed agricultural land in Africa to grow food crops
- 5. European countries needed cheap labour from Africans to produce raw materials
- European countries developed a high demand of minerals speculated to be available in Africa

### Course of the scramble and partition of Africa

∍ In 1876, Leopold II of Belgium convened

- a geographical conference on Africa in Brussels.
- The conference bore the African international Association presided by Leopold II.
- The Association set up trading and Scientific centers in central Africa, for the purpose of suppressing slave trade.
- The centers were to be given military protection
- There was rivalry between Britain and France over Egypt, which was for the later, since 1798.
- ∋ In 1882, Britain supported the government (British) against Urabi Pasha and his rebel group- single handedly.
- → The two had agreed to do so, jointly.
- Britain then moved and occupied Egypt.
- France was then forced to divert her attention to Congo.
- ∍ In 1880, France sent expedition to Congo.
- The group / expedition led by Sarvorgonan De Brazza signed the De Brazza- Mokoko treaty with chief Makoko of Teke.
- The treaty was then ratified by the French parliament in 1882.
- Leopold II then decided to send his agent to do the same in the region.
- Portugal got alarmed and approached Britain for an agreement which gave Portugal the right over the month of the Congo River.
- → To prevent war between European powers, Bismarck proposed for a conference at Berlin in 1884.

#### Berlin conference – 1884- 1885

 It was attended by representatives from all European power and American – from

- 15/11/1884 to 16/02/1885.
- It was mainly aimed at laying rules and guideline for the European partition of Africa.

### Resolutions passed (TERMS)

- 1. Any power that laid claim on any African country was to occupy the later fully.
- 2. Any power laying claims on any Africa territory was to inform the others for ratification.
- 3. Rivers Congo, Niger and Zambezi basin would be free for trade.
- 4. Congo basin was given to Leopold II and it was open for free trade. It later became Congo Free State.
- 5. If a country claimed the Coast, the immediate hinterland became their sphere of influence.
- 6. Slave trade was to be stopped in favour of legitimate trade.
- 7. European powers reasserted their occupation and control of the African territories.
- 8. Peaceful solving of conflicts.
- 9. African territories were partitioned, thus effective spheres of influence.
- 10. European nations vowed to protect missionaries & traders in their areas regardless of their nationalities.

# FACTORS WHICH FACILITATED EUROPEAN COLONIZATION OF AFRICA IN THE 19<sup>TH</sup> CENTURY.

- Weak political organization among Africa community / Lacked strong leadership e.g. Small political units.
- 2. Lack on unity among Africans.
- Natural calamities and epidemics e.g. Drought and diseases had weakened Africans
- 4. Collaboration by some Africa leaders.
- 5. African warriors were not well trained

- as compared to the Europeans.
- 6. The Africans lacked modern weapons.
- Europeans received reinforcements or military back up from home and from other colonies.
- Some communities were demoralized after their leaders were captured and even killed.
- European powers used ruthless tactics like scorched earth policy which destroyed the economic base of most communities thus weakening them.

### Effects of the partition

- Europeans gained fame and prestige for having colonial possessions.
- 2. It speeded up economic development of European nations.
- 3. It led to the introduction European administrative systems in Africa e.g. use of Chartered Companies.
- 4. New boundaries in Africa were drawn.
- 5. Introduction of European languages in Africa.
- 6. The setting up of boundaries led to the split of some communities e.g. Somali.
- Africa continued to maintain closer links with European countries through trade, education and diplomatic relations/ Neocolonialism.
- 8. Exploitative measures like forced labor, taxation and land alienation.
- African cultures were undermined/ European civilization was spread.
- 10. It led to the fall of some African Kingdoms e.g. Asante.

### Economic impacts of the scramble and partition of Africa.

 Africa became a source of raw materials and markets on European manufacture goods.

- 2. Development of infrastructure
- 3. Disruption of African traditional economic activities
- 4. Recruitment of Africa labour for European economic gain
- 5. It speeded up economic growth of European countries
- 6. Africa was underdeveloped due to exploitation of her resources
- 7. Introduction of large-scale agriculture
- 8. It created over-dependence on Europe by Africa on financial and technical support
- Africans were introduced on the international system of trade and finance
- 10. Growth of industries
- 11. Economic exploitation through taxation and land alienation.
- 12. There was introduction of wage labour to Africa

#### Its effects on African communities.

- Africans lost independence as Europeans established colonies.
- 2. African economies weakened by the European exploitation of the resources.
- 3. The African systems of government were replaced by European systems.
- 4. Africans adopted European languages which became official languages in the colonies.

- 5. Modern African states were created by the boundaries drawn during the partition.
- 6. African land was alienated as Europeans established permanent settlements.
- 7. Africans lost their lives / property as they tried to resist European occupation.
- 8. African culture was undermined with introduction of Western education / spread of Christianity / health facilities established.
- 9. Closer tie were forged between the Africans and the Europeans which created overdependence on Europe.
- 10. Intensification of warfare among African communities.
- 11. Infrastructure was developed to link agriculture and major mining centres.
- 12. Introduction of new policies like forced labour and taxation which were unpopular among Africans.

### Positive effects of European colonization of Africa.

- 1. The inhuman slave trade was stopped and replaced by legitimate trade.
- 2. They introduced new crops which were grown on large scale.
- 3. Modern methods were of farming were introduced which increased yields.
- 4. Farming and trading activities by Europeans led to growth of towns.
- 5. New means of transport & communication introduced by the colonists which eased

movement of people.

6. Christian missionaries introduced Western education which enabled Africans to read

and write.

7. They introduced money as a medium of exchange which was a more efficient method

of trade.

- 8. Some African traditional practices were abandoned due to missionary influence.
- 9. Manufactured goods were introduced to the Africans which changed their life-style / Establishment of industries which improved the economy.
- 10. The interior was opened up and became known to the rest of the

world.

- 11. Modern health facilities were introduced in Africa which led to effective control of tropical diseases.
- 12. Social interaction was enhanced through the study of African languages.
- 13. Europeans introduced new sources of energy eg HEP.

### European activities in Africa before 1850.

- 1. They were involved in trading activities.
- 2. They spread Christianity.
- 3. They were involved in exploration.
- 4. They were involved in spread of the Western education.

### AFRICAN REACTION TO EUROPEAN COLONIZATION

- The Africa countries reacted in the two ways: some resisted as others collaborated
- Some of the resistances were active while others were passive

#### Resistance:

### causes

- 1. Pride / hostility.
- 2. Patriotism and nationalism
- 3. Feared loss of power and wealth.
- 4. To maintain their territorial integrity.
- 5. Valued their freedom.

There was **Armed** and **passive** resistance.

### Maji Maji up-rising (1905-1907)

This occurred in South Eastern
 Tanganyika, led by Kinjekitile Ngwale,
 Abdalla Mpanda and Ngameya.

#### The communities involved:

Pogoro. 2. Ngindo. 3. Mbunga. 4. Ngoni. 5.
 Zaramo. 6. Luguru. 7. Wamakonde
 Wamwera. 9. Ndendeule. 10. Bena. 11.
 Matumbi. 12. Sangu

#### Causes

- The Africans resented the forced labour introduced by the Germans.
- 2. The Africans disliked the harsh rule by the Akidas who were foreigners and brutal.
- 3. The Africans were forced to grow cotton on infertile land.
- 4. Germans mistreated African rulers / harsh German rule / whipping them in public / flogging them
- 5. The Africans were against the taxation introduced by the Germans.
- 6. German officials sexually abused African women.
- 7. Inspiration by the prophecy of Kinjekitile Ngwale.
- 8. They wanted to repossess their land from the Germans.
- 9. The Ngoni fought to seek revenge over the Boma massacre of 1897.
- 10. They wanted to regain their lost independence.
- The Germans despised / looked down upon the Africans' way of life / Christianity Vs Traditional.

### Course of the rebellion.

- ❖ A Kolelo priest called Kinjekitile Ngwale mobilized people in 1904- for training and sprinkled them with 'magic water'- which they believed had power to turn render the bullets useless.
- ❖ It then began in July 1905, when the Pogoro of Kilope refused to pick cotton.
- The rebels attack government missions, posts and shops.
- The Germans hired Zulu, Sudanese and Somali mercenaries.
- they (Africans) resorted to guerilla tactics.
- ❖ It dragged on up to 1907 when the Africans were forced to retreat, with most of their leaders arrested and others executed.
- Matumbi warriors uprooted cotton to provoke the chiefs.

### Results of the MajiMaji

- 1. Destruction and looting of property.
- 2. Loss of human lives during the war.
- 3. Many People were displaced.
- 4. There was widespread famine and starvation.
- 5. There was suffering as many Africans were arrested and imprisoned.
- 6. It created fear and insecurity.
- 7. It brought about division between those who resisted and those who collaborated.
- 8. German colonial government changed its policies e.g. abolition of forced labour.
- 9. It laid foundation for future of African nationalism.
- 10. Rejection of culture and trust in Africa medicine men.
- 11. Fear, hence no armed resistance till the rise of nationalism after world war two

- 12. The people turned to education to learn white man's culture and to defeat him.
- 13. The economic activities were disrupted.

### Reasons for the defeat

- 1. Inferiority of African weapons which could not match the Germans.
- 2. German soldiers were well trained as opposed to the African soldiers who used the traditional methods of fighting.
- 3. Disunity / Hatred that existed among African communities made the Germans defeat them easily.
- ❖ After the Uwereka battle in sept-1905, 4. The German use of the Scorched Earth method of fighting which led to famine, hence weakened the Africans / Africans were weakened by famine which made them to withdraw from the war.
  - 5. The magic water of Kinjekitile failed to protect the Africans against the German bullets.
  - 6. Capture / Imprisonment / Execution of African leaders demoralized the Africans.
  - 7. German administrators received reinforcement.
  - 8. The large powerful communities who had been defeated by the Germans before, did not join the war.
  - 9. Africans lacked coordination / organization in their fight against the Germans.

### Why the Africans in Tanganyika were against the use of Akidas.

- 1. Akidas were foreigners.
- 2. The Akidas took the Africans' chances of administration in their country.
- 3. The Akidas were brutal / Harsh to the Africans / Whipping Africans e.g. flogging.
- 4. Akidas sexually harassed their women.

### Reforms introduced by the Germans after the Maji Maji.

- 1. Communal cotton growing was stopped.
- 2. Forced labour for settler farms was stopped.
- 3. Corporal punishment was forbidden and settlers who mistreated their workers were punished.
- 4. Better education and medical services for Africans were introduced.
- 5. Africans were involved in the administration of the region as Akidas and Jumbes.
- A colonial department of German government was formed in 1907 to closely investigate in the affairs if German East Africa.
- 7. Extra taxation on the Africans was rejected.
- 8. Kiswahili was accepted as an official language.
- A new governor, Lord Rechenburg who was sympathetic to the Africans was brought and he censored newspapers that supported Europeans against Africans.

- Bisandugu treaty with the French, defining the boundaries of the spheres of influence.
- Samori used the treaty as a trick to enable hi build his empire.
- During this peaceful time, the French supplied Tieba of Sikasso, Toure's traditional enemy with weapons.
- They also incited the people against him, thus leading to the Greater Revolt of 1888-1890.
- In 1890, war broke out between the French and Mandika.
- They accused each other of violating the Bisandugu treaty.
- He divided his army into three (3) groups: one armed with Modern rifles, the 2<sup>nd</sup> one helped in evacuating the people and the 3<sup>rd</sup> conquered the new areas for settlement.
- He expanded his empire to occupy areas from Mali, Ivory Coast and Ghana with the new capital at Dabakala.
- However, he was then defeated after 7yrs.

### Samori Toure of the Mandinka

- э He was born in 1830 in Guinea- of Dyula clan.
- ∍ His mother was captured in 1853 as a slave by a local ruler.
- He then served in the ruler's army for 7yrs to buy his mother's release.
- This is where he earned military training and experience.
- → He then established his empire Mandinka with the capital at Bisandugu in1881.

### Course:

∍ On the 28<sup>th</sup> march 1886, he signed the

### Causes of the resistance.

- To preserve the independence of his empire / To stop French colonization of his empire (MAIN).
- 2. To protect important places and areas like Bura gold mines
- 3. He wanted to expand his territory and he did not want to withstand any obstacle in his way.
- 4. He did not like the French collaboration with his enemies as they gave the enemies weapons eq Tiebba of Sikasso.
- 5. Had confidence in his large well trained and disciplined army with modern firearms.

- He wanted to maintain his social status as a leader ie as Al-Imam, a title he adopted in 1874.
- 7. He wanted to protect his trade which earned him revenue to purchase arms and ammunition.
- 8. He wanted to safeguard Islam from Christian influence / He was fighting a holy war (Jihad).
- 9. He wanted to preserve Mandinka culture.
- 10. He wanted to protect the Mandinka land from the European occupation.
- 11. He played off the British against the French.

### Disadvantages / challenges of the 2<sup>nd</sup> empire.

- He was cut off from the Bura and Wangara gold mines and trade routes and hence could not obtain revenue to purchase arms.
- 2. He was cut off from Freetown where he used to obtain arms.
- 3. The southern boundary was open to attacks from Ivory Coast.
- 4. The British occupation of the Asante in 1886 made him to advance in that direction. This meant that he was surrounded by enemies from all directions (the French and the British).
- 5. The local people did not support him as he was seen as an alien.

## Why the resistance protracted (lasted for long)

- His army was equipped with modern weapons which he purchased from Europeans, and others from local blacksmiths.
- 2. He had a large, strong and well trained army, disciplined and organized army.
- 3. He used Mandinka nationalism and Islam to unify the soldiers / He convinced his

- people that they were fighting a jihad against the French.
- 4. He also used guerilla warfare and scorched earth policy which proved effective against the French.
- 5. Some of his solders had served in their French colonial army and hence were familiar with their fighting tactics.
- 6. He was a competent military leader who inspired his soldiers democratically in the assignment of duties.
- 7. He used diplomacy eg he signed the treaty of Bissandugu (1886) to get more time to organize himself / He played the British against the French.
- 8. He was able to pay his soldiers well.
- He shifted his empire and capital further inland to give himself more time to reorganize his forces.
- His soldiers were familiar with the terrain, the fact which enabled them to be effective.
- 11. He had adequate food supply to sustain his army.
- 12. Use of horses by his soldiers, enhanced their effectiveness.

### Why he lost

- Disunity as his African neighbors refused to ally due to jealousy.
- 2. He failed to convince the British against the French as they (British) saw it as against the Berlin conference of 1884. His policy of non-interference.
- 3. Determination by the French to establish an overseas empire made them to use their superior weapons.
- Constant movement of his army and people denied them time to concentrate on meaningful activities, hence lacked food.
- 5. The newly conquered regions resented him and allied with the French, as they felt he was insensitive to human

- suffering.
- As he moved southward, he lost valuable areas like Bura gold mines. This paralysaed him to the extent of not being able to pay his soldiers and mercenaries.
- 7. The French empire besieged his Capital, blocking his retreat thereby forcing him to surrender.
- 8. His policy of diplomacy of playing off the British against the French failed as the British refused to support him when the French attacked him
- The Scorched Earth policy he used made his people impoverished and turned against him.
- 10. The British stopped the supply of guns to Toure in 1893

### **Effects**

- Mandinka disintegrated as the French established themselves in the area / Loss of independence.
- 2. Property was looted and destroyed as the Mandinka applied the scorched earth policy.
- 3. Many lives were lost due to the protracted war between the two groups.
- 4. The traditional institutions of the Mandinka were disrupted/weakened, thus rendering them ineffective in discharging their duties/functions / Loss of traditional leadership.
- 5. It laid down the foundation/growth for African nationalism.
- 6. Some Mandinka fled to other areas e.g. Ghana to avoid French colonial rule.
- 7. Toure was captured and exiled in Gabon in 1898 and later died in 1900.
- Economic activities were disrupted by the war/ there was decline in trade and mining by Mandinka.
- 9. There was an outbreak of famine due to neglect of farming activities.

10. The war created suffering / misery among the people leading to a state of despair.

### Lobengula and the Ndebele-1893

- → They originated from Transvaal to Matebeleland in Modern Zimbabwe.
- They migrated due to the Mfecane (Shaka's Wars) in the 1st half of the 19th c.
- They were led by Mzilikazi who died in 1868.
- → He was succeeded by his son Lobengula.
- The Europeans came for gold which had been discovered in Transvaal, as they extended to the land in North.
- Lobengula had successfully avoided a confrontation by diplomacy, but now he had to resist forcefully.
- ∋ Lobengula signed two treaties: Moffat and Rudd Concession.

### External problems that faced Lobengula's kingdom.

- 1. The British were interested in the Gold mines in Matebeleland.
- 2. Matebeleland offered good grazing land to foreigners.
- The British believed that occupying Matebele land would be a way of outflanking the Boers.
- 4. External attacks.
- 5. Land alienation.

### Reason for European interest

- The British South Africa company wanted to exploit the region between Limpopo and Zambezi of mineral wealth.
- 2. Climate of Matebele land and Mashonaland was suitable for European settlement.
- 3. Matebeleland lay the direct route from the cape in South Africa to Cairo, where

- Cecil Rhodes wanted to extended hi British authority to.
- 4. Matebeleland was not ready to surrender independence without fighting.

#### Causes:

- 1. The controversial Rudd concession of 1888.
- The Ndebele lost their control over their subjects the Shona, owing to the British control.
   They were prevented from raiding them.
- 3. The British incited the Shona to rebel against them.
- 4. Loss of land to the White settlers.
- 5. Loss of livestock to the company officials.
- 6. Imposition of taxes on them e.g. hut tax which were collected with a lot of ruthlessness.
- 7. Africans were forced to work on the European farms and mines.
- 8. The British wanted to start the war in order to portray the Ndebele as the aggressors and therefore conquer and impose their rule on them.

### Course /events / process

- ∍ 1887, Lobengula signed a treaty with Piet Grobler.
- ∋ He signed another one on 11 / 02 / 1888 with John Moffat.
- According to the later, Lobengula was not to enter any agreement with any other European power without the authority of British.
- ∋ On 30th Oct 1888, the Rudd Concession was signed.

#### Its terms

 The British South African Company was given absolute rights for mining in

- Matebeleland and Mashonaland.
- Lobengula would not enter any agreement with other European power without the consent of Cecil Rodes.
- 3. Lobengula was promised that no more than 10 (ten) European would be sent to his country at once.
- Lobengula was promised 1,000 breechloading rifles with 100,000 rounds of ammunition and a gunboat to patrol the Zambezi.
- 5. Lobengula and his heirs were to be paid 100 pound per month.
  - o In 1890, 200 whites marched from S. Africa into Mashonaland and hoisted the Union Jack (British Flag ) at Salisbuty (Harare) on 12<sup>th</sup> September.
  - o European settlers incited the shona against the Ndebele.
  - When Lobengula sent his troops against the shona, the Europeans got an opportunity to invade Matebeleland.
  - He was defeated, and died on his way to Zambezi.
  - o His commanders (Indunas) Surrendered.

### Reasons for his defeat

- 1. Smallpox weakened the Ndebele.
- 2. The British army was better trained and well organized.
- 3. The Shona supported the British against the Ndebele.
- 4. The British army got reinforcement from S. Africa.
- 5. The British had superior weapons as compared to the Ndebele.

#### **Effects**

- 1. Deaths / Massive loss of lives.
- 2. There was loss of independence by the

- Ndebele.
- 3. The Ndebele lost their land to the British / Land alienation, as they were pushed in to reserves.
- 4. Starvation among the Ndebele as their economic activities were disrupted.
- 5. There was looting and destruction of property.
- 6. Bulawayo, the capital city of Ndebele was destroyed.
- 7. There was wide spread fear and insecurity.
- 8. It provoked anti-British feelings which partly contributed to the Chimurenga wars of 1896-1897.
- The Ndebele military power was weakened.
- 10. The Ndebele were subjected to taxation.
- 11. The Ndebele cattle were confiscated.
- 12. The Ndebele were subjected to forced labor.

### **Chimurenga** – 1896-97

(Ndebele and shona) – leaders included Siginyamatshe, Nehanda and Kakubi

#### Causes

- 1. The Ndebele were not happy for losing their independence.
- 2. Loss of land by Ndebele.
- 3. Ndebele cattle were confiscated by the British South Africa company.
- 4. In 1859, there was outbreak of Rinder pest. The BSAC ordered for the shooting of all cattle.
- 5. Forced taxation.
- 6. Forced labor.
- 7. Company officials had interfered with trade between the shona and Portuguese, and the initial were not happy.
- 8. Shona traditional leaders were left out of the new British administration.

- Religious belief in 1859, there was outbreak of drought, famine and locust invasion. This was interpreted to mean that God was not happy with the presence of the white man. So he had to be resisted to go away.
- 10. Police brutality, as the chief no longer had power to punish.
- 11. The company refused to recognize the power of Indunas.

#### **Effects**

- Loss of Shona and Ndebele independence.
- 2. Loss of their land as the Ndebele were relocated to new land at lowlands.
- 3. The company appointed some Ndebele Induna as headmen.
- 4. Severe famine due to destruction of property.
- It led to great loss of lives. It led to initiation of political and economic reforms.
- 6. It led to annexation of more land and cattle as compensation.
- 7. The failure of Mwari Cult made many to convert to Christianity.
- 8. It united the Shona and the Ndebele who had been traditional enemies.
- 9. Lobengula fled to Bulawayo on realizing that defeat was eminent.

#### Reforms

- Taxation was refused from pound 2 to pound 1.
- 2. Africans were allowed to participate in agricultural activities.
- Better education and facilities for Africa were introduced.
- 4. Colonial administration was tailored to suit the Africans.
- 5. Missionaries got the opportunity to spread their faith as people lost faith in

their traditional.

- Indunas were recognized as headmen & no Shona police were to be stationed in Ndebele area.
- 7. Company rule was discredited by the colonial office due to poor administration.

Litunga (king)

He collaborated by signing treaties with the British which included:

The Harry-Ware Concession of 1888, The Lochner Treaty of 1890,

Coryndon Treaty of 1900 and The Lewanika-Lawley treaty of 1898.

### Reason for their defeat (Ndebele and Shona) Reasons for collaboration

- 1. Disunity among the Africans.
- 2. Superiority of British weapon.
- 3. Well trained and organized British army.
- Indunas lacked military practice as their regiments had been brought down earlier.
- 5. British got reinforcements from Botswana and S Africa.
- 6. Arrest and execution of their cult leaders.
- 7. Strong belief in Mwari cult worked against them at it proved futile.
- 8. Determination by Rhodes to suppress the resistance and establish effective occupation influenced him to negotiate for peace with Indunas.

### Roles of religion in Chimurenga.

- 1. It provided unity / it mobilized fighters.
- 2. It provided leadership.
- 3. It provided courage to the fighters.

### **COLLABORATION**

∋ Some community co-operated with the Europeans. E.g. Baganda, Lozi (Luyi)

### Lozi

- Э They were situated in modern Zambia.
- They were ruled by Lewanika, when the Europeans arrived. They ruled by

- Lewanika had come to power after a tough and bitter struggle with the Kololo. He then wanted to consolidate his position and wanted to consolidate his position and power against internal enemies.
- 2. He was influenced by missionaries as he thought he would benefit from them.
- 3. He wanted to promote trade between his people and the British.
- 4. Chief Khama of Bamangwato (Botswana) urged Lewanika to accept the British as he had done the same in 1883.
- Lewanika was threatened by the Portuguese, Boers and Germans who surrounded him pressing for control over Lozi / Protection against external enemies e.g. Ndebele.
- 6. He realized futility of resisting.
- 7. Lewanika's desire for Western education and civilization.
- To preserve economic structure of his people. There was pressure from mineral concession seekers hence he was forced to ally with atleast one of them for protection.
- 9. His counselors supported him in his decision to collaborate.
- He wanted protection from other African communities like the Ndebele and the Shona.
- In 1890, he signed the Lochner Treaty.

### Terms:

- British South Africa Company (BSAC)
  was given the executive rights to mine
  in all areas in Bulozi, except for certain
  traditional mines.
- 2. The company would pay Lewanika pound 2,000 per years and royalty of 4% of any mineral found and mined.
- 3. The company would built schools and promote trade.
- 4. Lewanika was reduced from absolute monarchy to constitutional monarchy.
- The company would appoint a resident to Lealui to supervise the company interests and to advise Lewanika on foreign affairs.
- 6. Bulozi would be protected against external attack.
- ∋ In 1898, the Lawley Treaty was signed between Lewanika and Robert Coryndon (British resident).
- ∋ This treaty reduced the size of the area ruled by Lewanika.
- ∍ In1900, another treaty was signed Coryndon Treaty.

### Terms of Coryndon treaty of 1900.

- British government would be responsible for administration of Bulozi.
- 2. The company would appoint officials and pay for the administration of the area.
- 3. The company would provide schools, industries, postal services etc.
- 4. Lewanika would only receive 850 pound per yr.
- 5. Lozi would have rights over game, iron working and tree cutting.
- 6. The company was allowed to acquire land on the Batoka plateau.

- 7. The company maintained its rights to mining in Bulozi.
- 8. Lewanika was to stop slave trade and witchcraft in his area.
- 9. Lewanika was made chief of Barotse.
- The British would protect Lewanika's Kingdom.

### How Lobengula collaborated with the British.

- He allowed missionaries to settle / operate in his territory.
- 2. He allowed the British to exploit minerals in his territory.
- 3. He accepted the British protectorate over his territory.
- 4. He allowed a British resident to perform administrative duties in the area.

#### Effects of the collaboration

- Lewanika received payment of 2000 Pounds yearly.
- 2. He lost his authority as the administration was taken over by the British South Africa Company.
- 3. The British South Africa Company took over the control of the minerals.
- 4. Lozi land was alienated and given to the British settlers.
- 5. The Lozi were forced to pay taxes so as to maintain the administration.
- 6. The Lozi were to provide forced labor for the settlers.
- 7. The Lozi were employed in the civil service.
- 8. The British South Africa Company developed infrastructure in Barotseland / Education / Spread Christianity.
- 9. The British established their rule in N. Rhodesia peacefully.
- 10. Lewanika was honored with the title of Paramount Chief until his death.

- 11. The British used Barotseland as a base to conquer the neighboring communities. 3. The Kabaka was to exercise direct rule,
- 12. The Lozi were protected by the British from external attacks

### Baganda collaboration

- Reasons for Mutesa's collaboration
- 1. He wanted his people to acquire Western education, medicine etc.
- 2. He wanted to reduce the power of the Islam and traditionalist by establishing a centralized authority.
- 3. He wanted protection against Mukama of Bunyoro.
- 4. He wanted to protection against Khedive Ismael of Egypt who wanted to extend his kingdom to Bunganda.
- 5. He wanted to trade with Europeans.
- 6. The Baganda were hospitable people who welcome strangers.
- 7. He wanted technological experts and skills to be given to his people.

### Reasons for Mwanga's collaboration.

- 1. He wanted protection from internal enemies especially the religious groups like the traditionalist, Muslims, Catholics and Protestants.
- 2. He wanted protection from his external enemies like Bunyoro, Khedive Ismael of Egypt, Ankole, Toro.
- 3. To safeguard his supremacy over the neighboring communities e.g. Bunyoro Kitara, Ankole and Toro.
- 4. He wanted to secure his position as a leader.

### Terms of the Buganda agreement -1900

- 1. British authority over Buganda was confirmed.
- 2. The Kabaka was to be referred to as 'His

### Highness'

- unlike other local rulers.
- 4. He was to be assisted by 3 ministers: Katikiro, Omulamuzi and Omuwanika.
- 5. Lukiko, (traditional legislature) was formally constituted as the country's parliament & court of Appeal.
- 6. The Composition of the legislature was fixed: 89 members = 60 notables, 6 Kabaka's nominees, 20 Saza chiefs and ministers.
- 7. Freehold titles were granted to the Kabaka, members of the Royal family, 1,000 minor chiefs.
- 8. About 1/2 of Buganda's become Crown
- 9. Confirmation Buganda's right with territories acquired during wars with Bunyoro.
- 10. Hut- tax of 3 rupees was to be collected by the chiefs to help raise revenue for administration.

N/B-Factors considered during this agreement therefore were Boundaries, Government, Land and Finances.

### Results of African collaboration

- 1. Collaboration communities lost their independence.
- 2. Introduction of Christian and European influence in Buganda.
- 3. Islamic influence in Buganda declined
- 4. Buganda got protection by the British against their traditional enemies like Bunyoro.
- 5. Kabaka's powers were reduced in the face of the growing educated members of the Lukiiko.
- 6. Kabaka gained recognition and was referred to as His Highness.
- 7. Buganda was given an advantageous position in the colonial administration

- and was used to conquer other communities.
- 8. Buganda advanced more economically than other communities as it acquired manufactured goods like clothes.
- 9. Buganda benefited from Western education and medicine.

## How African collaboration with the Europeans hastened colonization in Africa.

- It encouraged Europeans to settle on African land / Loss of African land.
- 2. It created disunity among the Africans.
- 3. It assisted the Europeans in conquering other communities.
- 4. It assisted / enabled Europeans to establish their control / entrench themselves.

### **TOPIC 11.COLONIAL ADMINISTRATION**

### The companies involved.

- 1. Royal Niger Company.-GEORGE GORDIE
- 2. Imperial British East Africa Company.WILLIAM MACKNON
- 3. German East Africa Company.KARL PETERS
- 4.British South Africa Company.CECIL RHODES
- European powers used Direct, indirect, assimilation and association.

#### Indirect rule

- Was used by Britain in Gambia, Sierra Leone, Ghana and Nigeria.
- African communities were ruled by powerful chiefs.
- This was put forward by Sir Fredrick Lugard, a British High commissioner in Northern Nigeria.

### **Roles of Emirs**

- 1. Collected taxes.
- 2. Solved minor disputes.
- 3. Organized communal work.
- 4. Recruited labour for European farms.
- 5. Maintained law and order.

### Reasons for its adoption.

- 1. They had a shortage of manpower to rule over the whole region.
- 2. The British had a shortage of funds to pay for the administration.
- 3. They also wanted to prevent/ avoid resistance from the Africans.
- 4. They had succeeded elsewhere e.g. India and Uganda.
- They wanted to reduce expenses / cost effective.
- 6. They wanted to prepare Africa self-rule.
- 7. They wanted to save time.

### The British in Nigeria.

### Why it was used in the North.

- Lugard wanted to maintain and retain Africa administrative system to minimize resistance.
- 2. There was already a well-established system of government based on Islamic law (Sharia).
- 3. It had succeeded in India, Uganda and Ghana and so they had a point of reference.
- 4. Poor transport and communication network was unsuitable to the British.
- 5. It was cost-effective as Africans would be left to do most of the work as few Europeans would be employed.
- 6. British lacked enough trained manpower for the vast territory.
- 7. Language barrier / Communication barrier as the Europeans were ignorant of the African languages.

8. The adoption of dual mandate policy by the British government encouraged the development of the colony for its own good and the good of the people.

### Its benefits / merits (indirect)

- Nigeria was ruled without employing many people.
- 2. It gave the local people a feeling that they were ruling themselves.
- 3. It made Nigerians nationalistic as the developed a positive attitude towards their country.
- 4. It never interfered with the Africa culture.
- 5. Infrastructure was developed.

### Its demerits / problems / why it failed (in South)

- 1. Did not have a centralized indigenous system of administration.
- 2. Lack of homogeneity in the South because there were many tribes and hence many languages.
- 3. The British introduced new ideas e.g. forced labour and taxation for which they were opposed.
- The failure of the British administrators to understand the socio-economic and political system of Southern Nigeria which was based on the office of the Oba made them give up easily.
- 5. Opposition from the educated elite who felt left out of administration of their own country / Leadership.
- Oba's of Southern Nigeria had defined powers, so when they were given wide ranging, the people became disunited / Excessive powers made them unpopular.
- 7. Misuse of power by the warrant chiefs who raised taxes for their own benefit. They also sexually harassed women.
- 8. Use of excessive force to suppress any

form of resistance provoked resentment e.g. the shooting of women during demonstration against the British.

### Its effects

- The British modified the previous system of administration, thus making the African traditional rulers lose their independence.
- 2. It helped to preserve African culture in the region as the British did not want to interfere with the African way of life.
- 3. It led to abolition of slavery and slave trade.
- 4. The British abolished Fulani system of taxation and replaced it with a single tax on each village.
- 5. Retention of Muslim law / Sharia made the region to lag behind.
- 6. The African chiefs became wealthier than the rest of the people because they were paid for their services.
- 7. Traditional rulers became unpopular among the people due to their new roles of collecting taxes / Forceful recruitment of fellow Africans as labourers for Europeans / as soldiers to fight in the world Wars.

### **DIRECT RULE**

- This was used by Britain in Zimbabwe (Southern Rhodesia).
- It involved complete replacement of African leaders by the whites.

### Its characteristics

- 1. Large number of European settlers.
- 2. The British settlers believed that the territory was to be a white settler colony.
- 3. For a long time, it was ruled by a commercial company (BSAC).

- 4. The company was headed by administrators assisted by chairmen of European civil servants.
- 5. There was a Legislative Council comprising four company nominees and elected company representatives.
- 6. It was applied to Africans whose resistance had been broken by Europeans.
- 7. Europeans acquired large tracts of land and therefore adopted measures to compel Africans to provide forced labour.
- 8. Africans did not participate in their governance.
- 9. There was wide spread of suffering and oppression of Africans in the hands of settler regime.
- 10. There was racial segregation eg use of parallel development policy.
- 11. There was restrictive voting qualifications.

### Why it was used in Zimbabwe.

- 1. They had enough personnel on the sport **Functions of the chiefs**. who were familiar with the area as well as the British administrative system.
- 2. The British South Africa Company had enough finance to pay the administrators.
- 3. They aimed at controlling the economy of Zimbabwe to maximize profit.
- 4. They wanted to ensure complete control of the Africans to avoid resistance.
- 5. Zimbabwe lacked a centralized system of government / The traditional system and indigenous political institutions since they had been destroyed during the British wars of conquest.
- 6. The 1896-1897 Shona-Ndebele uprising shook European confidence in local administrators.
- 7. The British aimed at establishing a

- British dominion settlement.
- 8. The British found the Zimbabweans uncooperative.

### **Others**

- 9. Mining and prospective operations were best executed through direct rule.
- 10. They aimed at establishing Zimbabwe a British dominion settlement.
- 11. 1896-97 Shona-Ndebele uprising had eroded European confidence in local administration.
- 12. The existence of the British South Africa Company personnel on the spot who were familiar with the area as well as the British system of administration.
- 13. The British found the Zimbabweans uncooperative.

### Hierarchy of company rule

- 1. Administrator.
- 2. Legislative Council.
- 3. Overseer.

- Collect taxes on behalf of the colonizers.
- 2. Recruit labour for the Europeans
- 3. Supervise communal work.
- 4. Solved minor disputes among Africans.
- 5. Interpreted government policies to the people.

### Land apportionment act -1930

- Native Reserve Area-set aside for African population.
- 2. Native Purchase Area-Also for African could buy land there.
- 3. European Area-exclusively for Europeans.
- 4. Unassigned Area set aside for expansion of government buildings.

### Its effects

- Land alienation, as many Africans were displaced / pushed into reserves.
- 2. Africans had limited rights since the day -to-day running was in the hands of the British without much reference to the African interests.
- 3. Africans were subjected to forced labour / heavy taxation.
- 4. The British South Africa Company was given too much power in the administration of the colony
- 5. It undermined the African economy as some worked in the White farms.
- 6. It led to the development of transport network in the country.
- 7. Introduction of new crops / Large plantation farms.
- 8. It undermined the African culture / Introduction of Western education in to the country / Spread of Christianity in the country.
- Africans were denied freedom of movement by being confined in reserves and required to carry identification cards.
- 10. Led to the rise of African Nationalism in the country.
- African traditional rulers lost their political autonomy and served as puppets of the British / Loss of independence.

### Duties of the Native Affairs Department in Zimbabwe.

- 1. Allocation of land to Africans.
- 2. Collection of taxes.
- 3. Recruiting of African labour

### Industrial conciliation Act (1934)

- It was to protect white workers from Africa competition e.g. Setting up trade

- unions.
- White settlers agitated for formation of a federation for the 3 central African territories, to overpower the Africans.

#### **Central African Federation**

 It comprised Southern Rhodesia (Zimbabwe) Northern Rhodesia (Zambia) and Nyasaland (Malawi).

### Terms / Features.

- 1. Each territory had its own government responsible for local administration.
- 2. The British were directly involved in the administration of the two northern protectorates.
- African Affairs Board was formed to ensure that no racist rules against African were passed.
- 4. The Federal parliament dealt with matters involving more than one territory and foreign affairs.
- In 11/11/1965, white settlers rebelled successfully against the colonial government under UDI (Unilateral Declaration of independence) led by lan smith.
- In 1970, UDI regime declared themselves a republic and changed the constitution: voting for Africans was now based on income and Europeans could purchase land from the government.

#### **Effects of British rule**

- Africans were displaced as their land was alienated.
- 2. Africans leaders lost their power and independence.
- 3. Africans were exploited as they paid taxes.
- 4. Africans culture was undermined in favour of European Christianity.

- 5. Transport, trade and industry were improved in the settler areas.
- Day to-day, running of the colony was vested in the hands of the British without much reference to the African interests.
- 7. The British South Africa Company was given too much power in the administration of the colony.
- 8. Undermined the African traditional economy.
- 9. Introduction of new crops in the region.
- 10. Africans were subjected to forced labour.
- 11. Introduction of Western education in the country.
- Africans were denied freedom of movement as they were confined to reserves and were required to carry Identification Cards.
- 13. Led to the rise of African nationalism in the country.

### **ASSIMILATION**

This was practiced by France in the 4 communes - St- Louis, Dakar, Rufisque and Goree in Senegal. France also colonized Algeria, Tunisia, Morocco and Mauritania. It was also practised by Portugal and Belgium.

- It involves a complete absorption of people into another community.
- It was practised by the French in West Africa (Senegal).

### **Conditions**

- 1. Able to speak in French.
- 2. A distinguished record in the military service
- 3. A distinguished record in the colonial service administration for at least 10 years.
- 4. Acquisition of a set standard of education.
- 5. Show good conduct.

- 6. Be reasonably rich.
- 7. Show loyalty to the French government.
- 8. Practise monogamy.

### Factors that facilitated.

- High percentage of Mullatos in the population of the communes who appreciated the European culture made it easy for the French to apply it.
- The people of the communes had had a long interaction with the French traders, administrators and missionaries; and this made them appreciate European culture.
- 3. A high percentage of the inhabitants of the communes had been converted to Christianity and this made it possible to apply the policy.

## Privileges of the assimilated Africans in the four communes of Senegal.

- 1. They were allowed to vote during elections.
- 2. They were allowed to vie for positions in the French parliament (chamber of deputies).
- 3. They were allowed to work and live in France.
- 4. They received French education.
- 5. They had freedom of movement within the French empire.
- 6. They were exempted from paying taxes.
- 7. They were allowed to become French citizens.
- 8. They were exempted from arbitrary arrest.

### Characteristics of assimilation policy.

- 1. Administrative assimilation.
  - -The colonies were regarded as

- provinces of French.
- 2. Political assimilation
  - French colonies were represented in the French chamber of deputies (Lower house)
- 3. Economic assimilation.
  - -French currency was used in the colonies.
- 4. Personal assimilation. Africans were given French citizenship and other privileges enjoyed by French citizens
- -The French regarded their overseas provinces as French provinces.
- -Africans were meant to become Black French.
- -Laws used in the colonies were made in Paris by the French.
- -Colonies were to elect deputies to represent them in the French
  - national Assembly.
- -They emphasized French culture and education.
- -Through education, language and religion, people became
- assimilated and acquired French citizenship.
- -The French currency was used in colonies to enhance economic
  - relationship.
  - -Trade was controlled by France.
- -Elections were done on universal suffrage.

### Reasons why it was used in Senegal

- Many 'Mulattos' (children of mixed parentage).
- 2. Africans were familiar with European trade, colonial administrators and missionaries.
- 3. Most of the Africans had already been converted to Christianity.
- 4. The French considered their culture and civilization to be the best in the world.

- 5. The ideas of the French revolution of 1789 motivated the French to spread the ideas of liberty.
- 6. To uphold the ideals of the republican government eg equality, liberty and fraternity.
- 7. It was part of the policy of divide and rule.
- 8. It was easy to rule assimilated people.

### How it was done

- Senegal was divided into 4 communes.
- э Dakar was HQ.
- Central government was headed by Governor General, under the French minister of colonies in Paris.
- Lieutenant Governors implemented central policies.
- The governor coordinated activities in various colonies and settled dispute of the federal colonies and distributed expenses among the colonies.
- The colonies had advisory council to advise the Governor General.
- Most administrators were former military officers.
- ∍ The lowest was French administrator.
- Africans were involved in overall administration.
- Laws were made in Paris.
- Africans were employed in industries.
- Some Africans become Christians while others become Muslims.
- э French language was spoken.

### Its benefits to Africans.

- Africans could become members of French parliament. (Lower Chamber).
- 2. Assimilated Africans were respected like French.
- 3. They were protected under French law.
- 4. Africans received higher education.

Created enlightenment which spearheaded Nationalism.

### Its problems / failures / Why it failed in areas outside the communes.

- Communication/language barrier made it difficult for the administrators to be effective.
- Poor transport network hampered their mobility thereby making it difficult to reach certain areas.
- 3. Resistance by African traditional rulers who feared loss of their positions.
- 4. The policy of assimilation required patience/was time consuming since Africans were not ready to forsake their ways of life/culture.
- 5. They faced opposition from Muslims who were opposed to the French values which embraced Christianity.
- 6. The appointed chiefs were undermined by their fellow Africans as they were viewed as colonial agents.
- 7. Resistance by the French traders/businessmen who feared competition from the Africans.
- 8. They lacked adequate funds to sustain their operations.
- Resistance from the French parliamentarians who feared being outnumbered in the Chamber of Deputies.

### **Effects**

- Racial discrimination was minimal in the colonies.
- 2. It undermined African culture.
- 3. French goods and modern ways spread in West Africa.
- 4. Educated Africans spear headed nationalism in Africa.
- 5. Africans were represented by deputies in the National Assembly.

- The policy was officially abandoned in 1945, then replaced by association.
- According to the association the African were allowed to retain their culture.
- ⇒ They were treated as subjects or 2<sup>nd</sup> citizens.
- They also come under the law of 'Indigenous' according to which they could suffer arbitrary arrest or their service in army be extended.

# Differences between the British policy of indirect and the French policy of assimilation.

- The French used the assimilated Africans in the administration, while the British used the traditional chiefs.
- 2. African traditional rulers under the British rule retained most of their powers whereas the chiefs under the French rule had limited powers.
- The British colonies were administered as separate territories while the French colonies were administered as provinces of France.
- 4. Most French administrators were military officers while the British administrators were both professionals and non-professionals.
- The French colonies elected their representatives to the chamber of deputies in France, while the British colonies were not represented in the House of Commons as they had their local councils.
- Laws used in the French colonies were made in the Chamber of Deputies in France, while in British colonies the laws were made by the Colonial Legislative Assemblies.
- In the French colonies, assimilated Africans became French citizens with full rights, while those in the British colonies remained subjects.

8. British indirect rule preserved the African cultures while Assimilation undermined African cultures.

### Similarities between the French and the British structure of administration in Africa.

- 1. Both had a governor as the chief executive of the colony.
- 2. They both had provinces as administrative units.
- 3. Both had districts as administrative units.
- 4. Both had locations as administrative units.
- 5. They both had sub-locations as administrative units.

### TOPIC 12.EMERGENCE OF NATIONALISM IN AFRICA.

- This is the feeling of pride for one's own country/ nation, patriotism and belonging
- Complete loyalty and devotion to one's nation/country.

### Reasons for emergence of nationalism in Africa

- 1. European invasion of Africa.
- 2. Establishment of colonial rule.
- 3. European alienation of the fertile African land.
- 4. Racial discrimination by Europeans.
- 5. African culture was undermined by Europeans.
- 6. European economic policies only favoured them.
- 7. Europeans interfered with the African political institutions.
- 8. Urban environment.
- 9. Western education.
- 10. Lack of employment by school leavers and servicemen.

### External factors for African nationalism.

- Existence of some independent African states
- International opinion against colonialism, especially by the communists. Colonialism was advocated by capitalists.
- 3. Africans studying abroad formed groups.
- International activities e.g. Pan-Africanism.
- Labour party in Britain and socialist and communist parties in Europe criticized colonialism.
- 6. 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> world wars encouraged the Africans.
- 7. United Nation emphasized the need for political independence.

### Methods used by Africans to air their grievances.

- 1. Secret meetings and public rallies.
- 2. Strikes and boycotts/ go-slows / sit-ins /protests.
- 3. Newspapers and magazines.
- 4. Petitions and delegations to international meetings.
- 5. Armed struggle.

## Roles played by ex-war soldiers in the growth of African Nationalism after 1945.

- 1. They applied military skills / tactics acquired to fight colonialists.
- 2. They trained African Nationalists in military / fighting skills.
- 3. They joined / formed Nationalist movements.
- 4. They organized / mobilized African Nationalists.
- 5. They made / serviced weapons used by the Nationalists.

### Nationalism in Ghana (Gold Coast)

 It started in 1860's when the Fante confederation was formed against the British.

### Factors that caused.

- Inadequate African representation in the Legislative Council caused discontent among the Ghanaians. (political)
- 2. Loss of power by the traditional African Chiefs created discontent against the colonial government. (*political*)
- 3. The need to guard against possible land alienation by the British united the Africans. (*economic*)
- 4. Introduction of taxation by the colonial government made the Ghanaians to resent. (*economic*)
- 5. The meager earnings by Africans from the sale of cocoa to Europeans created discontent among them. (*economic*)
- The order by the colonial government that the farmers uproot their cocoa due to prevalence of the "Swollen shoot" disease upset them. (*economic*)
- 7. The involvement of ex-service men in the 2<sup>nd</sup> World War inspired them to fight for their independence. (*political*)
- 8. The attainment of independence by India / Pakistan in 1947 encouraged the Ghanaians to demand or their right to govern themselves. (*political*)
- The existence of the young educated Ghanaians who had understood the ideas of democracy / freedom, who inspired the masses towards a worthy cause. (social)
- 10. High rate of unemployment among the Africans created resentment / discontent. (*economic*)
- The UNO Charter's declaration of the importance of political independence of all people inspired the Ghanaians.
   (political)
- 12. The charismatic leadership by Kwame

- Nkrumah and other leaders united the people in their struggle against colonial domination. (*political*)
- 13. The selective granting of trading licenses to European traders while denying the same to the Africans created discontent. (*economic*)
- 14. Sharp increase in food prices. (*economic*)
- It was led by the big six (Kwame Nkrumah, Danquah, William Ofori, Addo, Adjei and Obetsebi Lamptey).
- Parties involved United Gold Coast Convention (UGCC) – 1946, Convention People's Party (CPP) – 1949, National League of Gold Coast (NLGC) – 1941 and National Liberation movement (NLM).

### CPP, UGCC and NLM fought for nationalism

### Roles of Kwame Nkrumah in the struggle for independence in Ghana.

- He formed the CPP which involved the common man in the struggle for independence.
- 2. He was arrested with others in 1950 before his release and become leader of government business in the new cabinet.
- 3. His party won elections in 1954 and 1956, and gained independence for Ghana in 1957.
- He wrote newspapers like *The Accra Evening News* and magazines expanding his views on independence for Africans in Ghana.
- 5. He led delegations abroad.
- 6. He organized people to protest against injustices by the colonial government.
- 7. He held rallies where he educated the people on the importance of independence.
- 8. He made petitions and represented

people's grievances to the colonial government.

# How attainment of independence for Ghana motivated liberation of other African countries.

- 1. Nkrumah became vocal in advocating for liberation of African countries.
- 2. Ghana gave financial help to other African countries.
- 3. It motivated other African countries to strengthen their struggle.
- 4. He allowed some African nationalists to establish military bases in Ghana.

## Methods used in Ghana to struggle for independence.

- 1. Formation of political parties.
- 2. Writing protest letters to newspapers and magazines.
- 3. Mass protests / demonstration / boycotts / Strikes/ Go-slows.
- 4. Violent riots and rebellions e.g. 1948.
- 5. Holding political rallies to educate masses.
- 6. Used legislative Council.
- 7. They composed songs / poems to attack colonialism.
- 8. Made international contacts / fora for sympathy.

### Problems faced by nationalists in Ghana.

- Wrangles between leaders like Nkrumah and Danquar.
- 2. Formation of other political parties in the North viz National Liberation Movement (NLM), thus rivalry between parties.
- 3. Some chiefs and their supporters opposed nationalism, thus disunity.
- 4. Harassment by colonial authority.

- 5. Destruction of cocoa and inflation, hence shortage of funds.
- Declaration of state of emergency, hence no movement and association by nationalists.

### Mozambique

## Causes for emergence of African nationalism in Mozambique.

- Portuguese administrators replaced traditional chiefs.
- 2. Portuguese displaced Africans in their land.
- 3. Africans were forced to pay taxes.
- 4. Portuguese disrespected African culture.
- 5. Forced labour.
- 6. Social discrimination against Africans.
- 7. Restriction to African freedom of speech and intellectual advancement.
- 8. Cruelty to Africans by security police.
- 9. Multi-national companies exploited the resources in Mozambique.
- Mozambicans learned about liberalization elsewhere in Africa and got encouraged.
- 11. Mozambicans were forced to grow cash crops at the expense of food crops, and they were forced to sell to specific Portuguese companies at little pay.
- 12. Africans had no channel through which they could voice their grievances.

### How Portugal benefited from Mozambique before 1900.

- 1. Acquired mineral resources e.g. gold.
- 2. She enjoyed the status of prestige due to ownership of colonies in Africa.
- 3. She got cotton and other cash crops from Mozambique.
- 4. She forced Africans to pay taxes.

### How Nyerere assisted liberation movement in Mozambique.

- 1. He offered them a chance to open their offices in Tanzania.
- Liberation movement groups were allowed to establish bases on Tanzania soil.
- FRELIMO fighters were allowed to train on Tanzania soil / Nyerere unified

different factions of liberation movement to merge, which established front for the

liberation of Mozambique (FRELIMO).

- 4. He opened the border for asylum seekers from Mozambique.
- 5. He was vocal in condemning colonialism in Mozambique as he spoke in

Various forms e.g. United Nations Organization.

6. He supplied the solders with arms & military aid.

### Problems experienced by liberation movement in Mozambique.

- Catholic Church threatened members who supported FRELIMO with excommunication.
- 2. Assassination of Mondlane, the leader of the movement was a setback.
- 3. Poverty, hence lack of essentials like food.
- Sometimes was faced with internal divisions due to ideological differences and selfishness e.g. African elite led by Rev- Uria Simango and Lazaro Kavandame viewed FRELIMO as a ladder to acquire power and economic assets.
- 5. At the beginning, there was competition from other rival guerrilla movements e.g. COREMO.
- 6. The Portuguese were supported by

- South Africa.
- 7. The Portuguese government ruthlessly suppressed the nationalist movement.
- 8. Portugal outlawed political movements.

### Why the movement becomes violent

- The nationalists were supported and encouraged by communist countries.
- 2. Liberation committee of OAU supported the nationalists with finance and weapons.
- 3. Portugal refused to listen to the grievances of the Africans.
- 4. The country was forested and conducive for guerrilla warfare.
- 5. Success of the MauMau fighters in Kenya inspired them.
- 6. UNO denounced colonialism, thus boosting the moral of the nationalists.

### Methods used

- 1. Articles in newspapers.
- 2. Organizations and political parties.
- 3. Violence.
- 4. International fora and rallies.
- 5. Boycotts, hunger strikes.

# Why the nationalists in Mozambique were successful in their struggle for independence.

- 1. Support from the Africans since they wanted to liberate the country.
- 2. The country as ideal for guerilla warfare.
- 3. They attacked the Portuguese from different points.
- 4. They fought on a terrain to which they were familiar.
- 5. Constant supply of information from the Africans.
- 5. Support from the communist countries e.g. USSR and China for the basics e.g.

medicine.

- 6. OAU liberation committee with its Headquarters at Dar-Salaam hosted the guerillas.
- 7. They incorporated women who mobilized Africans in the country.
- 8. They collaborated with fighters from Southern Rhodesia.
- 9. The African combatants were friendly with the locals for total support.
- 1. Unity through mingling of people from different ethnic communities.
- 11. The coup in Portugal in 1974 by soldiers who were not in favour of colonialism gave

helping hand to FRELIMO.

#### South Africa

 Colonized by Britain and Boers (Holland / Netherlands)

There were 4 types of nationalism: African Black, Afrikaaner / Boer, European / White and Coloured / Mixed races nationalism.

### The leaders.

- Nelson Mandela. 2. Walter Sisulu. 3. Robert M. Sobukwe.
- **4**. Desmond Tutu. **5**. Steve Biko. **6**. Rev-John Dube. **7**. Oliver Thambo

#### Methods used

- Demonstrations.
- 2. Sending petitions to the British government.
- 3. Seeking support from the OAU and UNO.
- 4. Hunger strikes.
- 5. Condemning apartheid in churches.
- Use of mass media / newspapers / pamphlets.
- 7. Trade Unions / Boycotts/ Go slows.
- 8. Economic and political sanctions by the

international community

- 9. Armed struggle / Violence / Riots / Guerrilla warfare.
- 10. Use of pressure groups.
- 11. Forming political parties.
- 12. World leaders condemned apartheid in conferences like OAU.

### Peaceful methods used by the nationalists

- 1. Demonstrations / Peaceful demonstrations
- 2. Sending petitions to the British government
- 3. Seeking support from the OAU & UNO
- 4. Forming political parties
- 5. Condemning apartheid in churches
- 6. Hunger strikes
- 7. Mass media / newspapers / Pamphlets / Journals
- 8. Boycotts / Sit-ins / Go-slows / Trade unions

### Demands of African National Congress (ANC).

- 1. The members were against land alienation by the Whites.
- 2. They were against the discriminatory laws.
- They were against the Masters and Servants Act which exposed the Africans to forced labour.

### The objectives of the ANC.

- To unite all blacks to win majority rule in South Africa / Fight for independence.
- 2. Encourage a united anti-Racial activities / oppose apartheid / Racial discrimination.
- 3. Remove all forms of injustices / economic exploitation.

4. To win a vote / Franchise for all the people of South Africa.

#### Reasons for nationalism in South Africa.

- Development of Christianity which taught that "All people are equal".
- 2. Alienation of African land, creation of Bantu-stans.
- 3. Influence from Pan- Africanism which advocated for independence.
- 4. Participation in World War 2 which earned the Africans experience and courage.
- 5. Exploitation of African labourers at little pay and under poor conditions.
- Racial discrimination which was against the Africans in residential areas, education.
- 7. Desire to regain their culture against Anglicanization which they considered alien.
- 8. British dominated them in all spheres of life yet they could neither speak nor understand Afrikaners language.
- 9. The Africans disliked carrying of passbooks that restricted their movement.
- 10. Banning of political parties like African National Congress and Trade Unions.

### Problems faced by the nationalists.

- Arrests and imprisonment / detention of some nationalists crippled their activities, hence slowing down the struggle / Some nationalists were killed, which led to low morale, hence slowing down the momentum of the struggle.
- 2. Banning of political parties by the government made it difficult for the nationalist to coordinate their activities.
- 3. The nationalists were not united, thus creating tension among themselves and rendering their struggle less effective.
- 4. The government enacted pass laws

- which restricted movement, thus hampering their interactions.
- 5. They lacked adequate funds to finance the struggle, thus slowing down their operations.
- 6. They lacked press freedom, making it difficult for them to spread their ideas.
- 7. They lacked advanced weapons thereby making them less effective in their armed struggle.
- 8. They had different approaches in their struggle (moderate / radical wings), thus creating a loophole which was exploited by the government.
- 9. Use of divide and rule policy to tackle the Africans.
- 10. Many nationalists were forced to flee their country.
- 11. Nationalists were always trailed by secret police on apartheid instructions.

### Response by White Government

- 1. Restriction to nationalist activities.
- 2. Restriction to movement of people.
- 3. Banning of meetings.
- 4. Imposition of harsh laws.
- 5. Elimination of leaders e.g. Steve Biko.
- 6. Use of curfews or state of emergency.
- 7. Outlawing of political parties.
- 8. Arrests and imprisonment of political leaders like Steve Biko.
- 9. Arresting of black journalists.
- 10. Banning / censoring of newspapers like 'Weekend World' newspaper.

### Grievances of the Africans against apartheid in South Africa.

- Africans were not allowed to vote for black representatives in government.
- They were prohibited from living in urban areas / sharing facilities with the Whites.
- 3. The Pass laws restricted the African

- movement.
- 4. They were confined in to Bantustans / reserves.
- 5. The labour laws denied them equal employment opportunities.
- 6. Low quality education prepared them for only low level jobs.
- 7. The Land Acts gave whites exclusive rights over land.

### Political reforms introduced by President Fredrick de Klerck.

- 1. He released all political prisoners.
- 2. He repealed apartheid laws.
- 3. He allowed African to take part in elections.
- 4. He lifted ban on political parties.

### Political developments in South Africa between 1990 and 1994 that led to peaceful 1. Guerrilla fighters were trained in these introduction of majority rule.

- 1. Release of prominent African political prisoners e.g. Mandela.
- 2. Initiation of dialogue between all races by President De Klerk.
- 3. Holding of Multi-racial elections in April 1994.
- 4. Relaxation of apartheid laws through constitutional reforms / Accepting African political

leaders.

### Roles of Mandela.

- He was born in 1918.
- 2. He joined youth league of African National Congress.
- 3. In 1952, he was involved in organizing executions of Defiance campaign of ANC then he was elected Deputy president of 3. Conducted massive civic education to ANC.

- 4. He was arrested and confined to Johannesburg for 6 months.
- 5. In 1956, he was banned with ANC, and he arrested.
- 6. He was released 1961.
- 7. He wrote articles to liberation journal attacking liberation party constitution which favored white majority.
- 8. In 1961, he formed 'Umkhonto we sizwe' military wing of ANC.
- 9. In 1962, he led ANC to Adis Ababa and other countries to fight for change in South Africa.
- 10. In 1963, he sentenced to life imprisonment on Robin Island.
- 11. On Feb 11<sup>th</sup> 1990- he was released, and become the president of ANC.
- 12. In 1994, he was the 1<sup>st</sup> democratic president of independent South Africa.

### How African Countries assisted South Africa.

- Africa countries e.g. Algeria.
- 2. Embargo / sanctions for South African trade.
- 3. Pressure from OAU.
- 4. Material and financial support from wellwishers.
- 5. Political asylum to political refugees.
- 6. Provided for and venues for meetings to discuss apartheid.
- 7. Providing fighters to South Africa.
- 8. They condemned apartheid regime.

### Roles of church in promoting African nationalism in South Africa

- 1. Church leaders e.g. Desmond Tutu preached against Apartheid.
- 2. Involved in mass mobilization of their Christian followers to fight apartheid policies.
- become aware of their political rights.

- Appealed to other churches and governments to come to rescue of the suffering blacks.
- 5. Provided welfare services to displaced and injured during the struggle.
- 6. Press media owned by the churches joined in condemning apartheid.

### Roles of ANC in the struggle for independence in South Africa.

- It organized peaceful protests to fight for African rights.
- 2. In 1952, it organized a defiance campaign against segregation laws.
- 3. It united the Blacks / Africans in their struggle for independence.
- They had a fighting wing "Umkhonto we Sizwe" (Spear of the Nation) which fought for independence.
- Through its leaders, sought for international support. The leaders used diplomatic effort to win the support of the international community.
- 6. It organized guerilla struggle inside South Africa. This was through sabotage e.g. bombing of strategic installations e.g. power stations.

# Factors that hastened attainment of independence by African countries in the 2<sup>nd</sup> half of the 20<sup>th</sup> C.

- 1. Growing political awareness.
- 2. 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> world war.
- 3. Improved transport network.
- 4. More radios and newspapers were accessible to Africans.
- 5. Colonial government had started initiating reform programmes in Africa
- 6. Favorable international opinion against colonialism.
- 7. Formation of UNO, which was against colonialism.
- 8. More young Africans had attained

- university education e.g. Kenyatta, Nkrumah etc.
- 9. Formation of trade Unions.
- 10. Formation of political parties.
- Further deterioration of political, social and economic conditions for the Africans.
- 12. Africa was getting example from other countries e.g. Ghana.

## Factors that discouraged nationalistic movement in 20<sup>th</sup> century.

- Limited number of supporters at the beginning.
- 2. Lack of internal recognition and support by colonial powers.
- 3. Conflict of opinion over policies and strategies.
- Limited freedom of speech and movement.
- 5. Superior diplomacy, economy military and ideology-of the colonists.
- 6. Harassment and detentions.
- 7. Use of radio propaganda by colonial governments.
- 8. Widespread illiterate and ignorance.
- 9. Transport and communication.
- 10. Disunity.
- 11. Paternalist attitude e.g. Germans who thought Africans could never rule themselves.
- 12. Divide and rule policy by colonialist.

### Roles played by nationalists in struggle for independence in Africa.

- 1. They provided leadership.
- 2. They acted as spokesmen.
- 3. They set up political parties.
- 4. They publicized people's grievances.
- 5. They represented the people in international / national fora.
- 6. They inspired one another.

### **WORLD WAR 1**

#### Causes

- 1. Formation of **Alliances** after the Unification of Germany.
- 2. **Arms race** in Europe encouraged countries to be more aggressive.
- Nationalism in the Balkans fueled the already existing rivalry in Europe / Major European powers quarreled because of support of different nationalities which wanted independence from Turkey.
- 4. **Defeat of France** during the Franco-Prussian war made to look for an excuse to go to war.
- 5. **Moroccan crisis** / Algeciras by Spain, Germany, France and Russia.
- European Imperialism / Dissatisfaction during the sharing of colonies during the Berlin conference created mistrust among European powers.
- 7. **Assassination of the Austro-Hungarian heir**, Franz Ferdinand at Sarajevo by Gavillo Principe.

#### Arms race

- → The hostilities that had emerged among the European powers over colonies motivated them to build\_stronger forces in preparation for war.
- The major competition here was between Britain and Germany.
- Britain had been the strongest on water.
- In 1906, she launched the "Dreadnought" <sup>3</sup> battleship.
- The Germans then enlarged their Kiel Canal and constructed another similar to the British Dreadnought.
- France and Russia also did the same and caused international tension which later on broke into world war one.

### **Conflicting Alliance System**

- This rivalry led to the formation of alliance.
- The 1<sup>st</sup> one was the Dual Alliance led by Otto Von Bismarck.
- ∋ It was made up of Germany and Austria-Hungary \_ in 1879.
- During the Franco- Prussian war of 1870
   71, Germany had annexed Alsace and Lorraine province would at one time go for revenge.
- Bismarck also secretly encouraged French occupation in North Africa, to divert her attention and interest.
- He also wanted France to collide with Italy whose natives were in Tunisia.
- France consequently occupied Tunisia in 1881
- Italy then joined the Dual Alliance and it becomes Triple Alliance in 1882 (Germany, Austria- Hungary, Romania, Italy).
- ∋ Romania also joined.
- This alarmed Russia and France who responded by forming the Franco-Russian Alliance in 1892.
- Later in 1901, Britain reconciled with France and formed a new alliance- Dual Entente (understanding).
- ∋ Britain also signed separate treaty with Japan in 1902 to join.
- ∋ Japan had defensive problems from the Far East.
- In 1904, Russia joined the Dual Entente.
- These two major alliances fuelled out into world war one.

### Need for revenge

- Many power in Europe desired to settle the old dispute.
- ∍ France wanted to revenge against Germany for the loss of Alsace and

Lorraine.

∍ France was eager to acquire more territories in Africa and therefore she was always ready to take on any opportunity that comes her way, like the world war one.

### Balkan nationalism and wars (1912 – 1913)

- By the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, Turkey was weak and unruly (sick man of European).
- Most of the people in the Turkish Empire wanted a change e.g. The young Turks movement.
- ∋ Several states started declaring their independence.
- Austria then annexed two of the Turkish states namely- Bosnia and Herzegovina.
- ∋ Serbia protested, saying that she was the rightful leader of the states.
- In 1912, the Union of the Balkans (Greece, Serbia, Bulgaria and Montenegro) confronted the Turkish government.
- → They attacked Turkey claiming that the young Turks were persecuting Christians in Macedonia.
- э This becomes the 1<sup>st</sup> Balkan war.
- In 1913, the 2<sup>nd</sup> Balkan war broke out when Serbia and Bulgaria claimed for the ownership of Macedonia, which they won.
- Bulgaria got hurt and wanted to recover her loss in future.
- ∋ Serbia became ambitious to free all the Slavs in Turkey under the (Serbs, Slovaks, Poles, Slovenes and Croats).
- After the 1<sup>st</sup> Balkan war, Serbia was denied the occupation of Albania, and this made her bitter.
- There were suspicions of Serbia emerging as a powerful state.
- This therefore caused a lot of

international tension which only required a small provocation to result in to the World War 1.

### Immediate cause

- Assassination in Sarajevo.
- On 28/06/1914, Archduke Franz Ferdinand, the heir of Austrian throne and his wife- Sophie were assassinated in Sarajevo- capital of annexed province of Bosnia.
- The assassination was carried out by a Bosnian student-Garrilo Principe who was backed by a secret Serb organization called "Union or Death" (black hand).
- Germany assured Austria-Hungary of full support.
- Consequently, on 23<sup>rd</sup> July 1914, Austria sent an ultimatum to Serbia containing:
- 1. An explanation of the assassination.
- 2. Apology.
- Suppressions of all anti- Austrian publication of Austrian officials in the investigation / inquiry, including the trial of the culprit.
- 4. Participation of Austrian officials in the inquiry against the suspects.
- 5. Dismissal of all officials whom Austria objected to.
- 6. Austrian police to enter Serbia to enforce those demands.
- Serbia accepted all except the 4<sup>th</sup>.
- Consequently Austria- Hungary declared war on Serbia on 28/07/1914.
- Russia assisted Serbia, with Germany trying to demand for her (Russia's) withdrawal without success.
- → When Russia refused, Germany declared on Russia on 03/08 1914.
- ∋ Germany then attacked Belgium on 04/08/1914, Britain had to intervene,

and thus the war was in full gear.

### Course of the war.

- ∋ As the war stated both alliances expected quick victory.
- This was a miscalculation by the Generals.
- ⇒ The Germans come up with the Schlieffen plan put forward by General Alfred Von Schlieffen (1891-1906) – chief of General staff.
- According to the plan, they were to attack France through Belgium and quickly win the war-before turning to Russia.
- ⇒ The war was fought on four fronts: western front (France and Belgium) and Eastern front (Russia and the Balkans).
- → There existed other places when war took place e.g. E. Africa between the British and the Germans.

#### Western front

- → The Germans invaded Belgium and Luxembourg towards France.
- By September- 1914, the Germans were only fifty miles from Paris, thus forcing the government to flee to Bordeaux in Paris.
- Over confidence made them to fight on the eastern front and the western front, which created a Vacuum between.
- The British then attacked them.
- ∋ This forced the Germans to fall back at Marne River.
- After falling back, they dug trenches.
- Their opponents also did the same. Other weapons were brought in e.g. poison gas by the Germans. Aeroplanes by the Germans, and use of tanks by British.

- In May 1915, the allies toured the stations to their side by promising the African territories (districts) of Trieste and Treaty after the war.
- Other battles occurred at Verdum and Somme River, where many soldiers were killed and others injured.
- By 1915, Japan joined the Entente sidewith hope of capturing the German territories in Far East.
- Belgium, Serbia and Montenegro supported the Entente.
- Turkey and Bulgaria joined the Triple Alliance, which changed its name to central powers, while the Triple Entente became the allies / Allied powers.

### **Eastern Front**

- On this front, Russia mobilized forces faster than the Germans had expected.
- They however faulted when they attacked Australia and Germany at the same time.
- They somehow overpowered Australians before they were pushed back by the Germans, who recalled General Hindenburg from retirement after the 1<sup>st</sup> Russian victory.
- He led the German's victory against Russians in the battle of Tannenberg and Masurian lakes in August and September- 1914 respectively.
- Germans took Warsaw and Poland from Russia.
- ⇒ The Allies launched the Gallipoli campaign in 1915 to open up Dardonelles, which had been Closed by Turkey to Russia.
- This campaign however failed due to failure of Anglo-French attack on Constantinople, thus allowing the Turks to reinforce their armies. Bulgaria joined the central power in oct-

- 1915, following the failure of the Allies.
- ∍ In 1916, the Rumanians joined the Allies.
- ∋ In 1917, Russia withdrew from the war due to shortage of arms, food, clothes transport and communication and incompetent leadership.
- ⇒ They were weakened more by the outbreak of the Nov- 1917 (Bolshevik /communist Revolution).

The worst happened at sea in 1918 where the German Navy overpowered the British in the pacific, though the former were later on defeated.

- This defeat comes at the Falkland Island.
- By the end of it all, Britain was able to retain her naval supremacy.
- ⇒ She used this to block the central powers, especially Germany.
- It also enabled them to capture colonies from the central powers.
- ∍ It also facilitated communication among the allies.

For all this time, US had remained neutral and isolated from the European affairs.

- This was according to the Monroe Doctrine of 1823 which discouraged her from interfering with any European affairs.
- 2. Some of her citizens also were of German origin and hence feared a rebellion from them.
- 3. The war had not touched her directly until 1916.
- She feared an outbreak of a civil war between Americans of German descent and those of other European nationalities.

Later, she joined.

#### Reasons:

- 1. Pressure from friends and relatives of French and British in US.
- 2. German foreign minister Arthur Zimmerman sent a telegram to German Embassy in Mexico.
  - In this letter / telegram, he urged Mexico to join an alliance with Germany and attacked US from the South.
  - It was leaked to British intelligence which published it in newspapers, thus prompting US to join the war on the Allies side.
- 3. US and British intelligence linked some of the German's sympathizers with industrial sabotage in factories and trade union in USA, thus Germans were not to be trusted.
- 4. The declaration of unrestricted submarine warfare by the Germans in1917 on all ships trading with Britain.
- In 1915, the Germans sunk a liner called Lusitania off the coast of Ireland leading to loss of thousands of lives including 100 Americans.
- 6. The USA feared that should the Allies be defeated, then the payments of loans earlier given to them will not be paid.
- 7. She wanted to safeguard her trade with Britain.
- 8. She wanted to use it as a war between democracy and aristocracy.
  - In Feb 1915, Germany declared all Seas around Britain a war Zone, thus sinking all vessels sported.
  - ∍ This was aimed at starving Britain.
  - → On 07/05/1915, German U- boat (submarine) sunk a British 128 Americans were killed.
  - US congress voted for the declaration of war on Germany in April 1917.
  - The final battle was fought in France in which the central power was

- defeated in 1918.
- э Austria- Hungarian Empire collapsed.
- German soldiers rebelled.
- → Kaisers Generals deserted him.
- э He then fled to hop land.
- Democratic and socialist politicians from Germany declared Germany a republic before meeting the supreme commander of the Allies Ferdinand Foch on 17/11/1918, who gave them the following terms and conditions:
- 1. Germany to give up all her colonies.
- 2. All German forces to be withdraw from the Rhine
- 3. All German ships to surrender to the Allies.
- 4. Some parts of Germany were to be occupied by the Allies.
- 5. All allies prisoners of war to be released.
- **They were given 72 hours to respond.**
- On 09 / 11 / 1918, the Germans had no alternative but to sign for the terms.
- ∍ On 11 / 11 / 1918, 11:00am the war come to an end.

### Why the Allies won

- They had more soldiers from many countries-25.
- They had adequate financial and industrial resources in Europe and their colonies.
- 3. The allied powers had **superior weapons** as compared to the central powers.
- 4. The allied powers received **support from other powers** which boosted their ability in the war.
- 5. The **navy of the allies was superior** to the one of the central powers and they blockaded the seas, thus cutting off supplies for the central powers.
- 6. Germany was **deserted** by some of her supporters in the later years of the war

- and had to fight single handedly.
- 7. The entry of USA in the war in 1917, boosted the strength of the allies.
- 8. There was **political unrest / instability in Germany** which affected her military
  strength / army mutiny.
- 9. The failure of Schlieffen Plan / Delayed attack on France through Belgium.
- 10. The allies' political / military leaders were more **experienced and competent** in war than the central powers.
- 11. The **Spanish flu** weakened the central powers.

### Why the Von Schlieffen plan failed.

- German invasion of France was not as fast as expected as they faced some setbacks.
- 2. Entry of Britain in to the war on the Allies side.
- 3. Both sides were evenly matched in terms of weapons, than the Germans had thought.
- Russia mobilized her forces faster than expected, hence the German forces had to be deployed to the Eastern Front earlier than anticipated.

### Peace settlement

- A peace conference was to be held at Paris in Jan- 1919.
- ∋ In 1918, President Woodrow Wilson of US had proposed 14 points on which the needed peace with Germany would be based.

### They are:

- 1. Abolition of secret diplomacy.
- 2. Free Navigation at sea for all nations at any time.
- 3. Removal of embargo between states.

- 4. Reduction of armaments.
- 5. Adjustments of colonial claims in the interest of people concerned.
- 6. German forces to vacate Russian territory.
- 7. Belgium to be independent.
- 8. Alsace and Lorraine to be returned to France.
- Italian frontiers to be based on nationality.
- 10. Austro-Hungary to be self- determined.
- 11. Serbia, Montenegro, and Romania to be vacated and Serbia given access to sea.
- 12. Non-Turks to be independent
- 13. Independence for Poland with access to sea.
- 14. Creation of an international association to maintain peace.
  - However, the treaty was signed, through under protest from both parties.
- The powers / parties met in Paris in Jan – 1919 and drafted the treaties which were signed later The treaty of Versailles:
- Treaty of Server with Germany on 28 / 06 / 1919.
- 2. Treaty of St Germaine with Austria on 10 / 09 / 1919.
- 3. Treaty of Neuilly with Bulgaria on 27 / 11 / 1919.
- 4. Treaty of Trianon with Hungary August-1920.

This was later called the treaty of Lausanne, Switzerland in 1923.

However, this peace settlement was dominated by Woodrow Wilson USA, Lloyd George-PM- Britain, George Clemenceau-France and Vittorio Orlando - Italy.

### Terms of the treaty.

- Germany was forced to surrender some of her colonies in Europe to the allied powers / Alsace-Lorrain / Saar valley.
- 2. Germany was to surrender her overseas colonies to the League Nations.
- 3. Germany was to pay 6.5 billion pounds to the allies as reparation money.
- 4. Germany was restricted to an army of 100,000 men and its equipment was limited / Reduce her military strength.
- 5. Germany was required to release all her prisoners of war.
- 6. All German forces West of R. Rhine were to be withdrawn.
- 7. It proposed the formation of the LN to manage world peace.
- 8. There was to be no unity between Germany and Austria.

### Results of the peace treaty

- Germany lost all her colonial possessions and were supervised by the League of Nations. Germany was forced to pay war reparation of over pound 6.5 billion to the Allies (6,600 million). She was only able to pay 12.5%. (money paid by a country that lost war Reparations)
- 2. Germany size was reduced by 1/8 and her population by 6.5 million.
- 3. Germany lost the provinces of Alsace and Lorraine part of Schleswig and Eastern Silesia to France and a strip of Eastern Prussia.
- 4. The city of Danzig became free under the supervision of League of Nations.
- The Saar valley (with deposits of coal and iron) was supervised by League of Nations for 15years, then the population would vote either to belong to France or Germany.
- 6. Germany was restricted to an army

- recruitment of 100,000 men. The army was limited in equipment it could use.
- 7. It prevented any union between Germany and Austria.
- 8. Hungary and Yugoslavia become independent / new states emerged.
- 9. Finland became independent of Russia.
- 10. Poland received a 3<sup>rd</sup> of its territory that had been taken over by Germany during the war.
- 11. Rhinelands was to remain without German troops.

### Reasons for the failure of peace settlement.

- Germany was wholly blamed for the war and the punishment was too harsh. The treaty was assumed to punish and humiliate the Germans, who consequently resented.
- Interests of the colonized people were not considered by the allies, as the colonial benefits were handed over to France and Britain as mandates of League of Nations.
- 3. Italy was a major power, yet she was given a raw deal in the peace settlement, as she only got Stria which formerly belonged to Austria.
- Interests of the minority were not considered e.g. Austria/German Union was disallowed yet the Austrians were for it.
- The USA senate did not support it as the USA constitution did not allow commitment to such organizations like the League of Nations which was proposed by Woodrow.

### Results of the WW1

- Massive loss of human lives that were killed.
- 2. There was **starvation** because most of the productive people went to war and

- land and crops were destroyed.
- 3. Property of great value was destroyed e.g. cities.
- 4. Economic activities were destroyed leading to **economic depression**.
- Large sums of money were spent on the war, thus leading to weak economies of Europe.
- 6. **German overseas colonies** were taken over by the League of Nations.
- 7. The **size of Germany was reduced** by an 8<sup>th</sup> and her population by 6.5 million.
- 8. Many people were displaced leading to refugee problem.
- Political boundary of Turkish was reduced as Syria, Palestine, Iraq and Egypt were no-longer her possessions.
- New nations were created in Europe e.g. Yugoslavia, Hungary.
- 11. **Disintegrating of empires** in Eastern Europe
- 12. Rise of dictators in Europe like Hitler.
- 13. It led to development and use of advanced military equipment, e.g. submarines, poison gas, armored tanks, and aircrafts.
- 14. It led to nationalistic feelings among Africans who participated in the war.
- 15. There was advancement of the art of surgery due to many war casualties who required operations.
- 16. Germany & her allies were made to pay reparations (war damages) to the time of 6.5 Billion Pounds.
- 17. The **League of Nations was formed** to promote peace among nations.
- 18. USA emerged as a leading world power and most European countries turned to her for industrial and financial needs.
- 19. There was wide spread of diseases.
- 20. There was advancement in the field of medicine.

### **Economic**

- Ended the economic domination of the world by European countries.
- 2. Massive destruction of property.
- 3. Created unemployment.
- Slowed down economic development of most countries / Led to economic depression / European countries relied on colonies for economic growth.
- 5. It led to developments in engineering.
- 6. **Large sums** of money were spent during the war.

### THE LEAGUE OF NATIONS

- The idea of an international association was proposed during the World War 1; and in the Paris peace conference in April 1919.
- ∍ It was established on 10/01/1920- with its Headquarters-Geneva in Switzerland

### Aims

- 1. To strive for disarmament of the world.
- 2. To attain international peace and security.
- 3. To guarantee political independence of member states and world countries.
- 4. To solve international conflicts through dialogue.
- 5. To take joint effort against aggressors through imposition of sanctions.
- 6. Maintain good working conditions.
- 7. Supervise territories taken over from the Central powers.
- 8. To assist suffering countries through abolishing slavery and improving labour conditions.
- 9. Territories lost by the central powers were to be entrusted to former allies who were to govern on behalf of the LN.
- 10. To create permanent institutions to

implement the objectives of the League like the Assembly.

### **Structure**

### 1. Assembly

- All the members were represented in the Assembly.
- ∍ Met annually at the headquarter
- → Controlled budget of the organization
- Admitted new members
- Appointed non-permanent members to the league's councils
- → Considered the signing of treaties.
- It supervised the work of the league.
- → Appointed judges to the Court of International Justice.

### 2. Secretariat

- It was the administrative
- ∍ It was headed by a general secretary

## Eric Drummond of Britain was the 1<sup>st</sup> G.S. - 19-33

- 1. Collected materials needed for meetings.
- 2. Published relevant reports.
- 3. Carrying out all researches
- 4. Implemented decisions of the league
- Linked the organs of the League / providing continuity between one meeting of the of the council or the Assembly and the next.
- 6. Carrying out all correspondences relating to the League.

### 3. Permanent Court of International Justice

- ⇒ Established between 1920-1922
- ∋ Based in the Hague –Netherlands
- ⇒ It comprised 11 judges and 4 deputies who serve for a period of 9 years.
- ∋ It settled disputes between states.

### 4. International Labor Organization

- Established in 1919 to take care of the workers' welfare.
- Other specialized committees were established within the LN to deal with special issues like child welfare, drug related problems etc.

### Its achievements

- It has Promoted health services like fighting diseases through the International Health Organization.
- 2. It championed for the welfare of the workers through the International Labour Organization.
- 3. It provided relief to the refugees / war casualties /areas hit by famine through the Refugees Commission.
- 4. It settled dispute between different European countries / Member states.
- 5. It supervised mandate territories through Mandates Commission.
- 6. It organized disarmament conferences in Europe.
- 7. Helped in the reconstruction of European countries e.g. Austria.
- 8. It controlled the trafficking of dangerous drugs and trade in children and women.

#### Extras

- Help to preserve world peace by encouraging members to settle disputes through the ICJ.
- Administered the Saar region & the city of Danzig, despite hostility between the

Poles &Germans.

- 11. Successfully ended the war that took place between Greece and Bulgaria in 1921.
- 12. Assisted in the economic reconstruction of European countries e.g. Austria.
- 13. Helped to regulate the manufacture of arms and their sell, holding

disarmament meetings.

- 14. Supervised the repatriation off many prisoners of war from 26 countries.
- 15. The committees on the intellectual cooperation helped states to promote education &

ideas concerning peace.

16. Drew up conventions concerning transportation in international roads, rivers and

oceans.

### Its failures

- Simo-Japanese dispute of 1931 was never sorted out. The Japanese invaded Manchuria region of China. When the league asked her to withdraw, she refused and pulled out of the league in 1933.
- 2. 1935, Benito Mussolini invaded Ethiopia. When he was told to step, he went on & pulled out of the League.
- 3. It was failed to stop Germany from violating the terms of the Versailles e.g. she embarked on rearmament programme.
- 4. Many other nations embarked on rearmament programmes.
- 5. Germany invaded Poland & Austria in between 1936-1939, Russia

in Finland -1939, without the League's Intervention.

### Why it failed

- Some European countries opposed the Versailles because it favoured the allied powers that fought Germany.
- USA did not support the League because it did not was to involve in European affairs / Monroe Doctrine / Refused to join.
- 3. Membership of the organization was not that inclusive as some countries were left out while others were not given a chance to join.
- The League's conference of ambassadors violated the objective of maintaining world peace by supporting some countries' claims against others.
- 5. Most members were concerned about their sovereignty as opposed to the interest of the League.
- Some members adapted to the policy of appeasement towards certain regimes so as to avoid confrontation, this weakened the League.
- 7. Shortage of funds for the league to implement its programmes.
- It lacked its own army to implement its decisions where peace was threatened. It depended on the good will of the members who at times were unreliable.
- The search for colonies diverted the members' attention from the activities of the League.
- Rise of dictatorship regimes in Europe weakened the League as the dictators refused to accept the decisions of the League.
- Economic depression of 1929 weakened most of the world's economies, hence they were not able to support the League financially.
- 12. Rearmament of Germany. (main)

After the World War 1, the League Nation was established to prevent further war. This however failed and made it inevitable for the World War 2 to take place.

- This World War 2 could be attributed to the tough terms of the Versailles treaty which was dictated.
- It has made Germany bitter and suspicious and hence, a threat to the world.

### Causes

- The inability of the League of Nations to implement its resolutions and punish those who violated them encouraged the aggressors to pursue their objectives or ambitions, and this intensified tension in the world.
- 2. The **rise of dictators** in the 1920's and 1930's destroyed democratic rights especially in Russia (Joseph Stalin), Italy (Benito Musolini), Spain (Fraisco Franco) and Germany (Adolf Hitler). They overthrew democratic governments, rearmed themselves and engaged in acts of aggression, attacked other countries. This accelerated tension in the world.
- 3. Establishment of alliance system between major powers encouraged acts of aggression because of the feeling of mutual support.
- 4. The policy of appeasement by France and Britain encouraged the dictators to carry on with their acts of aggression.
- The great depression of 1930s intensified economic inabilities and forced countries to practice economic protectionism.
- 6. The growth of nationalism made countries to be inward looking and therefore were reluctant to participate in international issues.
- 7. Unfavourable conditions imposed on

### **WORLD WAR 2**

- Germany by the Versailles treaty humiliated and made her nurse a grudge  $\ni$  against the allied powers.
- The rise to power of Adolf Hitler and his determination to restore Germany's lost glory led to war as he invaded other countries.
- Armament and increased armed forces increased tension contrary to the wishes of the Versailles treaty on production of arms and training of national armies.
- 10. The Spanish civil war (1936-1939) led by General Franco was admired and supported by Mussolini and Hitler who provided him with military assistance. During the war, Germany was able to test her weapons and also practice her war tactics like bombing civilian targets from the air.
- Hitler's aggression when he invaded Czechoslovakia in 1938 after which it turned to Poland. Britain and France could not take these aggressions anymore and they declared war on Germany. This was the beginning of WW2.

#### Course of the war

- It has 2 major groups-Allied forces (Britain, France, and USA) and the Axis powers (Germany, Italy & Japan).
- ∍ It was fought on Western and Eastern fronts.
- Germany forged a union with Austria -10/3/1938 and used it to claim Sudetenland of Czechoslovakia.
- ∍ In 1939, Italy invaded and occupied Albania.
- Hitler also claimed Danzig City, before forging the Nazi-Soviet pact of friendship with Russia.
- → On 1/9/1939, Germany invaded Poland
- ∋ Britain and France asked her to

#### withdraw

- When she refused, they declared war on her on 3/9/1939
- э Russia attacked Poland from the East.
- **∋** She was completely occupied by the two.
- 9 On 30/11/1939, Russia attacked Finland.
- ∋ By Feb-1940, the Finns were defeated.
- Attempts for peace were made but in vain.
- Germany attacked Denmark on 9/4/1940 and overpowered the allies.
- On 14/06/1940, the Germans reached Paris.
- On 22/6/1940, France surrendered and signed an agreement with Germany, and surrendered Alsace-Lorrain, N. France and Atlantic Coastline.
- э Germany attacked Britain in July 1940.
- This was the battle of Britain, which proved too tough for Germany.
- Mussolini captured French and British Somaliland & Egypt.
- → On 8/11/1942, British and Americans attacked Morocco, thus, overpowering the Axis.
- ∍ On 22/6/1941, Germany attacked Russia.
- ∋ Russians won, and in July 43, Russian completely won the battle (Barbarossa)
- On July 14<sup>th</sup>, Japan attacked South East Asia, and attacked American controlled Philippines.
- She was embargoed by the Allies.
- ∋ As the two (Japan & America) were negotiating, Japan attacked American naval base of Pearl Harbour from the air.
- America inevitably entered the war.
- On 8/12/1941, Britain, USA & Netherlands declared war on Japan.
- In the Far East, British used her bases in India to attack Japan.
- Japan then attacked India in 1944, and allies won in this battle of Kohima.

#### Defeat of Italy and Germany

- → The allies attacked Italy's Island of Sicily in July 1943, causing rebellion against Mussolini in Italy.
- ∋ Germany stepped in and rescued Mussolini from prison.
- By December 1944, Germany was under pressure from allies from all fronts.
- On 6 / 06 / 1944, the allied forces landed in France to liberate her.
- ∋ This liberation was achieved on 25 / 8 / 1944, and Belgium on 2 / 9 / 1944
- ∍ In 1945, allies entered Germany from the West.
- ∋ Germans were driven out of Yugoslavia.
- ∋ Hitler fled to an unknown place in Berlin where he killed himself in April-1945.
- 9 On 7 / 05 / 1945, the Germans surrendered.

#### Defeat of Japan

- → After Germany surrendered, Japan vowed to continue fighting.
- USA developed atomic bomb which had been tested in July 1945 in New Mexico desert.
- ⇒ US president-Harry Truman agreed to use it on 6 / 08 / 1945 on Hiroshima killing 78,000 people.
- ∋ On 8 / 8 / 1945, Russia attacked Japan.
- ∋ America dropped another longer bomb on Nagasaki on 9 / 8 / 1945, killing over 40,000 people.
- ∋ Consequently, Japan surrendered on 15 / 8 / 1945.

### Why Hitler was interested in Russia at the beginning of this war.

- 1. He wanted Russia's rich natural resources like oil.
- 2. Russia provided a space for Germany's expansion.
- 3. He wanted to conquer Russia for

- prestige.
- 4. He had underrated Russia's Red army and people.
- 5. He wanted Russia's rich grains.

#### Why the axis lost the war

- The allies had many supporters, hence more manpower.
- 2. Germany failed to control her expansive conquered territories. Some had to look for liberty and turned against her.
- 3. **US entry** into the war on allies' side after Japan's attack on Pearl Harbour.
- The allied forces controlled the North sea which they used to blockade Germany.
- 5. Germany's forces were **overstretched by fighting** war on many fronts.
- 6. The allied had **superior weapons**-atomic / naval.
- 7. The allies had **more wealth** / resources e.g. industrial and financial resources.
- 8. **USSR recovered** from her losses, rearmed and attacked Germany.

#### Extras

- Axis ran short of raw materials / Stretched beyond their capacity.
- Miscalculation by Axis powers / Germany made tactical mistakes.
- The axis made serious tactical mistakes e.g. Japan failed to realize the importance of aircrafts and concentrated on producing battleships.

#### Roles of USA in the war

- 1. She provided modern military equipment to the allies.
- 2. She provided financial support to the allies.
- 3. She provided military personnel to the allies.
- 4. She blocked the Panama canal against

the axis powers.

5. She dropped the atomic bomb at Nagasaki and Hiroshima forcing Japan to surrender.

#### Results of the war

- Many lives were lost, as an estimated total of 30 million people are believed to have been killed.
- 2. The bomb on Japan released radioactive substances which affected many lives long after the war.
- 3. Many people were injured / maimed / Permanent health complications.
- 4. Property was destroyed as homes and bridges were demolished.
- 5. Torture during the war led to psychological and emotional problems to families, individuals & nations.
- 6. External trade almost came to a standstill due to fear and insecurity.
- 7. The communist zone extended to cover half of the continental Europe which resulted in the creation of the "Iron Curtain" that geographically divided Europe down the middle.
- 8. Agriculture and industry were disrupted due to lack of raw material and human resource.
- 9. Inadequate food, shelter and clothing.
- Pre-war balance of power was destroyed as new powers like USA and USSR emerged.
- 11. It led to spread of communism in Eastern Europe.
- 12. USA assisted the weakened Western

- powers to prevent them from falling in to the hands of communism. This was through the Marshal Plan.
- There was division of Europe in to two opposing blocs, hence the Cold war developed.
- 14. There was the establishment United Nations Organization to maintain world peace and prevent another war from taking place.
- 15. Germany and her capital, Berlin was divided in to two.
- 16. It destroyed the myth of European military superiority due to the defeat of the British & American forces in the Far East by Japan.
- It strengthened nationalism in the other parts of the world as the Africans had participated.
- 18. Created bitter feelings and mistrust among the countries that fought in the war.
- 19. It caused economic depression as large sums of money were spent.
- 20. There was improvement in the military technology.
- 21. There was the creation of Israel / State of the Jews.
- 22. There came unemployment as demoralized servicemen increased demand for jobs.
- 23. There was displacement of people, hence suffering.

#### INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**∃** This is the relation between nations.

- ∋ It became necessary to develop some good relations after the World War 2 to heal the wounds of the effects.
- ∍ This occurs at different levels and categories.

#### 1. Economic

This involves trade and other commercial activities

#### 2. Diplomatic

- Onduct of relations through peaceful means.
- → This is done through ambassadors

#### 3. Political

This is between countries with similar political activities and institutions

#### 4. Socio-cultural

- Understanding of countries with family set up to appreciate the different cultures.
- It is in exchange of dancers, musicians, sports etc.

#### **Benefits**

- Promotion of economic growth through trade which enables states to acquire goods they do not have
- 2. Promotion of peace and security
- 3. Promotion of cultural exchanges which enhances international understanding

 It enhances collective solving of problems of global concerns e.g. terrorism

#### **International Organizations**

- a) International Governmental Organization (IGO) e.g. UN, Common Wealth & African Union
- b) International Non-governmental
   Organizations (INGO) e.g. Red Cross,
   Amnesty International & Transparency
   International.
   Membership may be global, regional or
   as otherwise defined.

### Benefits of International Government Organizations

- They rovide members with a forum to consult
- 2. They act as regulators
- 3. They enhance peace and security
- 4. They contribute to enhancing equitable distribution of facilities.

#### UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION (UNO)

Was established at the end of the World War 2 to replace the League of Nation and signed on 25/4/1945, before it started functioning on 24/10/1945.

#### **Aims**

- To maintain international peace and security.
- 2. To develop friendship between nations.
- 3. To promote social progress and better living standards for people.
- 4. To promote cultural interaction between member states.

- 5. To protect the interests of minority and vulnerable groups like women and children.
- 6. To promote economic development to reconstruct the world economy / To build the economies of the countries affected by the war.
- 7. To replace the League Nations which had failed to prevent another World War. 1. It maintains international peace &

#### Its principle organs

- 1. General Assembly (GA)
- 2. Security council (S.C.)
- 3. International Court of Justice(ICJ)
- 4. Economic and Social Council
- 5. Trusteeship council (T.C.)
- 6. Secretariat (S)

#### 1. General Assembly (G.A.)

- ∋ All member states are represented.
- 1. It liaises with the Security Council in making recommendations on maintenance of peace & security.
- 2. It discusses issues relating to international peace and security.
- 3. It elects jointly with the Security Council, the judges of the ICJ / Appoints the Secretary General.
- 4. It receives / Acts on report from the Security Council and other UN organs.
- 5. It approves UN budget / Apportions the amount of contribution by each member state.
- 6. It elects non-member states of Security / Economic / Social fields.
- 7. It promotes the development of international law.
- 8. It facilitates the realization of Human Rights / Fundamental freedoms.
- 9. It promotes higher / better standards of living among nations.

#### 2. Security Council (SC)

- It has 15 members 5 permanent (China, France, Russia, UK & US).
- Each of the 5 permanent powers have a right to veto a decision, or abstain.
- security.
- 2. It investigates disputes, which may threaten international peace.
- 3. It calls upon states to settle their disputes by negotiation.
- 4. It recommends the procedures to settle disputes / Advise members.
- 5. It determines situations which may threaten peace and take action.
- 6. It admits, suspends and expels members from UN.
- 7. It calls upon members to provide forces against aggressors.

#### 3. International Court of Justice (ICJ)

- It can apply international conventions to establish rules recognized by the states.
- 2. International customs may also be applied as law.
- 3. It may apply general principles of law recognized by nations.
- 4. It may also apply judicial decisions by nations.
  - ⇒ It handles cases of international borders, treatment of diplomatic staff, crime against humanity etc.
  - ∍ It has 15 judges from different nations elected by the General Assembly and Security Council.

#### 4. Economic and Social Council (E.S.C.)

- It comprises 54 delegates
- They meet twice a year For efficiency, it has set up the following

specialized commissions as follows:

- 1. Statistical commission.
- 2. Population commission.
- 3. Commission of status of women in developing countries especially. in the third world countries.
- 4. Commission for social development.
- 5. Commission on Narcotic drugs.

#### Its functions.

- It initiates studies and reports on given matters.
- 2. It recommends on respect for human rights.
- 3. It drafts conventions & presents to General Assembly on matters of its areas of operation (jurisdiction).
- 4. It convenes international conferences on economic and social matters
- 5. It co-ordinates activities of specialized commissions and agencies.
- 6. It co-ordinates the NGO's with the UN.

#### 5. Trusteeship Council (T.C.)

- ∋ It has 5 permanent members and 6 nonpermanent.
- ⇒ It takes care of the colonial boundaries.
- These boundaries / territories include, those placed under the council voluntarily by other powers, under League Nation and those from axis powers.

#### 6. Secretariat

- It deals with administrative day-today activities of the United Nation
- ∍ It is headed by the Secretary-General
  - -who serves for 5 years and maybe re-elected.
  - e.g. 1945-1953- Tuygve Lie -Norway

1953-1961- Dag Hammarkjold-Sweden

1961-1971- U Thant -Burma (Nyanmar)

1972-1982- Kurt Waldhereim -Austria.

1982-1991- Javier Perez de Cuellar -Peru

1992-1996- Boutros Boutros Ghali-Egypt

1997-2006- Kofi Annan -Ghana

2006-presen, Bann Ki moon

- 1. It registers treaties.
- 2. It publishes reports.
- 3. It conducts research / Survey economic and social trend & problems
- 4. It administers peace keeping operations and mediate international dispute.
- 5. It informs the Security Council on any threat of peace.
- 6. It interprets and translates speeches and documents into UN official languages.
- 7. It implement laws / policies and decisions by other organs.
- 8. It administers programmes.

#### Languages used in their meetings.

- 1. English
- 2. French
- 3. Spanish
- 4. Chinese
- 5. Russian
- 6. Arabic

#### **PERFORMANCE**

#### **Achievements of the United Nation**

- 1. Promoted peace and security
- Through peace-keeping missions, United

Nations observers, sanctions, settling international disputes and researching on peace and security. E.g. Congo -1960 -1963, Iraq & Iran- 1980-1988 Middle East -1948-1949, Iraq-Kuwait-1990-1992

International Court of Justice (ICJ)
 provides just resolution to international problems

#### 2. Disarmament efforts

⇒ Through policies approach, it has helped to reduce eth manufacturer and use of arms. E.g. Antarctic treaty -1995 in Antarctica, Tlatelolco Treaty -1967-banning nuclear in Latin America and Caribbean, South Pacific NuclearZone Treaty -1985 forbade testing and damping of nuclear materials.

#### 3. Human rights agenda

- ∋ December 1948, universal declaration of human rights was adopted.
- ∋ 1989, Convention on the rights of the child was established.

#### 4. Promoted Rights of women

∋ It has eradicated all forms of discrimination against women and created fora for them to articulate issues.

#### 5. Has provided humanitarian assistance

- -To refugees
- -Better housing proposals
- -Relief food to hunger stricken areas

### 6. Promoted democracy and good governance

 -It eliminated colonialism and apartheid with dictatorship

#### 8. Has promoted international cooperation in dealing with global issues.

It preserves environment through UNEP

-It educates of dangers of damaging Ozone layer.

- 9. Has managed to combat terrorism to some extent.
- 10. Alleviating chronic hunger and rural poverty in developing countries, Credit through International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD).
- 11. It has set standards for sea and air travel.
- 12. It has improved health through vaccines, education on smallpox, HIV e.t.c.
- 13. It has encouraged exchange of cultural programmes.

#### CHALLENGES / PROBLEMS OF U.N.

- Ideological differences among leaders of different countries
- 2. Lacks the machinery to enforce its decision / Standing army.
- 3. Veto power of the big five; Britain, US, Russia, France and China.
- 4. Loyalty to other international organizations
- 5. Nationalism and National interests.
- Natural disasters / Epidemics, hence place an unexpected strain on the UN resources.
- 7. Terrorism / International terrorism.
- 8. Different levels of development.
- 9. Arms race-accumulation of armaments

- by powerful countries threatened world peace.
- 10. Voting as a block.
- 11. Occurrences of many conflicts between and within countries.
- 12. Failure by some members to remit their subscription, hence shortage of funds.

# WAYS THROUGH WHICH THE UNITED NATIONS HAS PROMOTED WORLD PEACE AND SECURITY

- Dispatching of UN- Peace keeping missions to conflict areas.
- 2. Sending UN- observers to conflict areas.
- 3. Sending fact finding missions to conflict area.
- 4. UN- special envoys and representatives are sent to negotiate or arbitrate for peace between opposing groups.
- 5. UN sanctions are imposed that defy the resolutions.
- 6. The ICJ helps to settle disputes among states.
- 7. UN peace messengers are sent to encourage and coordinate efforts for the organization.
- 8. UN uses Non-Governmental (NGOs) to research for the cause and solutions to the conflict.

### Ways in which the UN provides humanitarian assistance.

- It assists refugees / displaced persons with clothes in order to preserve human dignity.
- 2. It helps in resettling displaced persons by negating for their resettlement in safe areas.
- 3. It provides relief food in drought stricken areas in order to avert loss of lives.
- 4. It provides medical supplies to the victims of war / other calamities so as to

- restore human health.
- It provides shelter to the deserving cases by building houses / giving materials for construction.
- 6. It provides education to the vulnerable groups in order to promote literacy.
- 7. It assists in evacuating people affected by floods to safer ground to avert suffering.
- 8. It protects refugees by ensuring their respect / observance of basic human rights.

#### **COMMONWEALTH**

These are 54 states which were initially part of the British Empire.

It originated in 1839, then 1931, thus the British Commonwealth from the British rule in India.

In 1961, South Africa pulled out when her apartheid policy was condemned. She rejoined in 1994 after eradicating the policy.

#### **Its Categories**

- Britain and her dominions of Canada, Australia and New Zealand.
- 2. African Nations
- 3. Asian nations
- 4. Islands from the Caribbean, Pacific and Mediterranean.
  - The members have no formal agreement.

#### Aims of Commonwealth.

- To promote world peace and international understanding
- 2. To promote development in poorer member states.
- 3. To promote cooperation between member states.

#### **Principles of Commonwealth**

- 1. To promote peace and security
- 2. To ensure personal liberty and equality of rights for all citizens with no discrimination.
- 3. To oppose all forms colonial domination and to be committed to principles of human dignity and equality.
- 4. To fight poverty, ignorance and diseases and promote the rise in living standards.
- 5. To enhance free international trade.
- 6. To promote co-operation to combat iniustices.
- 7. To promote exchange of knowledge.
- 8. To form multinational associations based Has 350 members on consultation.

#### Its characteristics

- 1. The member states use English as a common language.
- 2. They appreciate each other's cultural values.
- 3. The member states co-operate in education e.g. exchange programmes.
- 4. The member states recognize Queen Elizabeth as Head of Common wealth.
- 5. Member states have common military traditions based on British military svstem.
- 6. They participate in Commonwealth games.
- 7. They have economic ties / the rich assist the poor/technical aid.

#### Its Organization / structure

#### 1. Heads of state summit

- ∍ It is made up of presidents or prime
- They meet after 2 years
- They discuss political and economic problems

#### 2. Ministerial meetings

- → The ministers of foreign affairs. Finance and defense meet annually.
- **The ministers for education, health** and law meet once after 3 years.
- They also frequently visit member countries.

#### 3. Secretariat

- → It co-ordinates business
- It circulates programmes
- ⇒ It organizes the Heads' meeting.
- ⇒ It encourages projects.

- It is headed by secretary general and 2 assistants.
- The 1<sup>st</sup> assistant deals with international affairs, legal cooperation and information.
- The 2<sup>nd</sup> one deals with economic affairs, export market and food production.
- ∍ The 1<sup>st</sup> one (S.G.) was Arnold Smith of Canada.

#### Specialized agencies

#### 1. Common wealth agricultural bureau

- It coordinates agricultural activities.
- 2. Common Fund for Technical Cooperation
- It advises youth programmes

#### 3. Common wealth youth programmes

It involves young people in activities of national interests.

#### 4. Common wealth Science Council

- ∋ It co-ordinates development of regional programmes e.g. Energy and rural technology
- 5. Common wealth Regional Health Cooperation Secretariat for East Africa, South and Central.
- It promotes co-operation in medical sector.

#### 6. Common wealth development cooperation

→ It finances and Trains members

### 7. Common wealth parliamentary association

→ The members hold parliamentary meetings for exchange of ideas.

#### 8. Common wealth press union

It enhances communication between members.

Common Wealth Market is financed by CFTC (Common wealth

Fund for Technical Co-operation Common wealth Youth

Programme (CYP), & Common wealth Science council (CSC).

#### **Functions of Commonwealth**

- 1. It provides partnership co-operation.
- 2. It provides financial assistance.
- 3. It supports education and training.
- 4. It encourages trade among member states.
- 5. It promotes technical co-operation.
- It enhances social and cultural cooperation

- 7. It promotes understanding and tolerance.
- 8. It promotes democracy and good governance
- 9. It provides forum for member states to air their views on international affairs with one voice.
- 10. It promotes respect, trust and friendship
- 11. It provides machinery to maintain peace
- 12. It promotes development of legal systems.
- 13. It purports youth programmes geared towards national development

#### Achievements of Commonwealth.

- Member states have received technical knowhow through the provision of experts and advisers in various fields e.g. agriculture.
- Developing member states have acquired skills manpower through provision of scholarships and training programmes by the developed member states.
- 3. Member states have conducted trade among themselves with relative ease.
- 4. There has been cultural interaction among member states e.g. games.
- Developed member states have provided financial aid to the developing members.
- 6. It has provided a forum for member states to air their views with one voice on international issues
- It has provided a mechanism for maintaining peace among member states e.g. Commonwealth Peace Keeping Force which was sent to Zimbabwe.
- 8. Promoted friendship and understanding among member states through conferences.
- Enhanced democratization process in developing countries by sending

- observers to monitor elections.
- It has a youth programme which assists projects and activities initiated by the youths in member states.
- It has enhanced development of legal system among member states. This is done through secondment programmes and adoption of legal precedents by member states.
- 12. The commonwealth press union fosters close cooperation between broadcasting stations of member states.

#### Its challenges

- Dominance by developed nations e.g. Britain
- 2. Political instability in some countries disrupts its operations.
- 3. Inadequate funds to run its day to day activities
- 4. Withdrawal of some members e.g. 1961, South Africa.
- 5. Dividend loyalty prevent the spirit of unity.
- 6. Non-existence of executive authority weakens the decision making and implementation of policies.
- Spirit of nationalism as some member states concentrate on their national issues at the expense of the organization.
- 8. Race and colour discrimination which undermines unity in the organization
- 9. Ideological difference which also causes divisions in the organization
- 10. Personality differences which affects to policy of togetherness.
- 11. Need to correct colonial injustices created misunderstanding.

#### Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

This is the policy of neutrality or independence of policy and caution in

- international affairs.
- It was founded by Jawaharlal Nehru as not siding with either West or Eastern blocs in matters pertaining political, social or economic differences and independent approach to international or foreign policy.
- Other founder members included Josip Broz Tito of Yugoslavia, Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana, Dr Ahmed Sukarno of Indonesia, Chou En-Lai of China, etc.
- It was started in 1953.

### Reasons for the rise of Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

- To handle international policies of the newly independent states since they did not want to join either blocks.
- 2. To encourage peaceful co-existence among member states.
- 3. To safeguard the independence of the developing nations.
- 4. For the developing nations to establish their own distinct identity.
- 5. To enable the states to get maximum aid from the blocs for development.
- 6. The emerging nations did not want to be involved in the cold war.
- Needed co-operation to avert another world war.
- 8. To promote economic development of member countries
- To make funds available for the improvement of agriculture and food production in general.

#### Criteria for membership

- A country should consistently support the movement for national independence.
- Should not be a member of a multilateral military alliance e.g. NATO and WARSAW PACT.

- 3. A country should have adopted an independent policy based on the co-existence of states with different political and social systems.
- 4. If a country is a member of a bilateral military should not be based on context of great power conflict.
- 5. If the country has military base for a foreign country, it should not be based on context of war against a great power.

NB/1 & 2 are the main.

#### Aims of Non -Aligned Movement

- To safeguard the sovereignty of member states.
- 2. To fight for decolonization of 3<sup>rd</sup> World countries and currently the new form of neo-colonialism.
- 3. To work for disarmament of superpowers.
- 4. To discourage military alliances promoted by the super powers.
- 5. To encourage active participation in the United Nation Programmes by speaking with one voice.
- 6. To promote economic independence of member countries.
- 7. To fight racism in the world.
- 8. To promote neutrality among members.
- To establish new world economic order with good terms of trade for primary commodities from member countries.
- 10. To finance improvement of agriculture by availability of funds.
- 11. To provide an international forum for the weaker nations to express themselves with one voice as in the UNO.

#### Its structure

#### 1. Co-ordination

Its administration is non-hierarchical, rotational and inclusive, thus providing all members with an opportunity to participate in global decision making.

#### 2. Co-coordinating Bureau

It reviews and facilitates activities within Non -Aligned Movement.

### 3. Working groups, contact groups, task forces and committees

e.g. committee on Palestine, group on Human rights etc.

They meet often to discuss issues in their jurisdiction.

#### 4. Non-aligned security council caucus

It constantly strives to adopt unified positions on summits and ministerial conference in decision making.

#### 5. Joint co-coordinating committee

It co-ordinates co-operation between Non-Aligned security movement groups.

### 6. Co-ordination of non-aligned countries in other UN centres

It gives consideration to establishment of arrangements for co -ordinations of international organization Headquarter and Non-Aligned Security Movements.

#### 7. Troika (Past, Present and future chairs)

→ They discuss strategies and format of official elections.

#### 8. Panel of economists

⇒ It assesses the international economic situation from the perspective of the developing countries and identify their issues of concern.

#### 9. Documentation

**∃** This is done by the host country.

#### 10. Decision making

It is done by consensus to promote solidarity and unity.

### Aims of various Non-Aligned Movement meetings

### Conference of heads of state and government

- ∋ It has 2 committees -1 for political and 1 for economic issues.
- ∍ It meets every 3 years.

#### 2. Ministerial conference

∋ It reviews development and implementation of decisions of Aims of Non-Aligned Movement

# 3. Ministerial meeting in New York during a session of United Nation General Assembly.

∋ It is made up of ministries of foreign affairs to deliberate on agenda of General Assembly, of importance to Non-Aligned Movement.

#### 4. Ministerial meeting of the cocoordinating Bureau

 It is in charge of preparation for summits.

### 5. Meeting of ministerial committee on methodology

It decides on methods to be used in implementing decisions.

### 6. Meeting of the standing ministerial committee on economic co-operation

To strengthen South-South Cooperative and activate discussions between development and developing countries.

### 7. Ministerial meetings in various fields of international co-operation

- ⇒ They discuss different issues e.g. information, agriculture etc.
- 8. Extraordinary meetings of the cocoordinating Bureau.
  - → They address exceptional cases that call for urgent attention.
- 9. Meetings of the working groups, task forces, contact groups and committees.
  - They make contributions to Non-Aligned movement

#### **Growth of Non-Aligned movement**

#### 1. 1<sup>st</sup> summit -Belgrade -1961

- ∍ It was attended by 25 countries.
- ∍ It aimed at preventing nuclear war.

#### 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> Summit -Cairo -1964

 It focused on problems of member states after colonialism

#### 3. 3<sup>rd</sup> Summit -Lusaka -1970

It discussed peace, independence, co-operation and democratization.

#### 4. 4<sup>th</sup> Summit -Algiers 1973

It aimed at economic promotion in member states.

#### 5. 5<sup>th</sup> Summit -Colombo -1976

It discussed the liberation of Zimbabwe and Namibia and abolition of Apartheid in South Africa.

#### 6. 6<sup>th</sup> Summit- Havana -1979

It discussed enemies of Non-Aligned Movement e.g. imperialism, colonialism, neocolonialism etc.

#### 7. 7<sup>th</sup> Summit- New Delhi-1983

It discussed peace, nuclear disarmament, etc.

#### 8. 8<sup>th</sup> Summit -Harare 1986

⇒ It discussed in Independence for Namibia and apartheid in South Africa.

Other summits in that order followed later discussing and emphasizing on the issues already discussed.

They included: Belgrade -1989, Jakarta - 1992, Cartagena de India-1995, Durban - 1998 and Kuala Lumpur -2003.

### How non-Aligned member states safeguard their national security.

- By keeping off from conflicts of nonaligned members.
- 2. By maintaining their sovereignty / independence.
- 3. By maintaining their economic independence.
- 4. By not identifying with either communism or capitalism.
- 5. By maintaining their cultural identity.
- 6. By not joining military alliances NATO/WARSAW PACT.

#### **Achievements of Non-Aligned Movement**

- It has provided international forum where members can speak with one voice.
- 2. It has encouraged members to put forward their national interests before those of the blocs.
- 3. It has enables member countries to exert their voting power / influence in world affairs.
- 4. It has speeded up attaining of independence for those countries that were still under colonialism.
- 5. It has promoted peace and security by encouraging member states to observe neutrality in super power conflict.
- 6. It has played a key role in disarmament

- by condemning the arms race.
- 7. It has promoted the creation of a new international economic order by encouraging member countries to trade with any of the 2 super power block / financial assistance from both power blocs.
- 8. It has given funds to the needy countries through a fund, created to address demanding circumstances.

#### **Problems of Non-Aligned Movement**

- 1. It has too many members -116 by 2004.
- 2. It lacks an army to enforce its decisions
- 3. Political instability in some member states, hence affecting their contribution to the movement.
- 4. Differences over territorial boundaries.
- 5. Most of the members have weak economics, hence difficult for them to meet their obligations.
- 6. Some members' interests (national) have conflicted with the Non-aligned movement
- 7. Personal differences have also developed.
- 8. Membership to other organizations has affected the Non-aligned movement.
- 9. Differences not related to the Nonaligned movement principles have emerged e.g. during Colombo Summit-June 1978-Several Arab states were keen on seeing Egypt expelled from the Non-aligned movement because she had signed a separate peace treaty with Israel. This was not within the Nonaligned Movement principles because the two countries did not sign the treaty with the super powers.
- 10. Break-up of Soviet Union and end of cold war as the rivalry subsided hence destabilizes the mov't.
- 11. Ideological differences between member 1. Occupation of Eastern Europe by the -States, hence weakened their

- cooperation.
- 12. It lacks a Secretariat and this makes the coordination of various activities difficult.
- 13. Shortage of funds due to poverty of some member state, hence not able to remit their subscriptions on time.

#### **COLD WAR**

- → After the World War 2, untied States of America and USSR emerged as world super powers.
- Due to ideological differences, mistrust and suspicion emerged between them.
- USSR feared that USA would bomb her the way she had bombed Japan.
- USA and her allies then adopted capitalism which refers to production based on private ownership of property.
- USSR and her allies adopted communism which educates for classes society and means of production is owned by the community.
- Each side then went out to spread its system
- Both tried to stop the spread of each other's ideologies.
- This kind of cold relations between the two sides is what came to be referred to as the cold war.

#### Weapons used

- 1. Words and Propaganda
- 2. Use of veto power.
- 3. Spirit of non co-operation.
- 4. Economic sanctions / Embargo
- 5. Powers to provide financial aid to enemies of the opposing bloc.
- 6. Military aid to enemies of the opposite side.

#### Causes

Soviet Union caused fear among USA

- and its allies in Western Europe.
- Disagreement between USSR and USA over the reduction of arms.
- The ideological difference pursued by USA and USSR created mistrust / suspicion among them, leading to hostility.
- The domination of the UN by USA and her allies was checked by USSR through the use of her veto power, thus increasing tension.
- 5. The involvement of both USSR and USA in European conflicts in the late 1940s created tension among them.
- America's Marshall plan to revive European economies after the war made USSR to counteract by forming a similar one / Communist Information Bureau (COMECON), thus enhancing tension.
- Formation of military alliances like NATO by USA and her allies led to USSR and her allies to form a similar alliance / WARSAW PACT, thus intensifying the rivalry.
- 8. Construction of the Berlin wall by USSR in Germany to block Western influence led to increased tension.
- 9. Differences over the status of Germany after the WW2.

#### Course

After the World War 2, Russia and her allies remained strong while their opponents were weak.

#### 1. Truman Doctrine

∋ In March 1947, the US President Harry Truman came up with 'Truman Doctrine' which stated that USA was ready to assist any people fighting against oppression.

2. Marshal plan

- US secretary, George Marshal, said that US would assist the economic recovery of Europe so long as the states could co-operate
- **This was rejected by Russia.**

#### **COMINFORM & COMECON**

- Commit information Bureau (COMIFORM) was established by Stalin to counteract US economic programmes.
- ∋ It was to co-ordinate the work of the European Communist parties and enforce ideologies conformity.
- He also set up the Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON) which was to achieve what the Marshall plan was to do.
- ⇒ It however failed because the Russian economy was weak.

#### **NATO & WARSAW PACT**

- North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) was established in April 1949.
- It was established as an alliance against any form of aggression.
- This was by Britain, France, and Belgium etc.
- ⇒ The soviet then signed the Warsaw pact in Poland on 14/05/1995 with East Germany and six other powers.
- This intensified the cold war.
- ⇒ Germany was also divided into 2 East and West, with Russia Co-operating with East.
- The two became completely independent of each other.

#### **COLD WAR IN ASIA**

∋ Russia helped Mao Tse-Tung and his Communist party to gain power in China in 1949.

- → Korea was occupied in the South by America and Russia in North.
- ∋ In 1948, America declared South Korea an independent state, as Russia did the same for the North.
- 25/06/1950, North invaded the South in a bid to re-unite the two by force.
- → The two sides also supported different leaderships in Vietnam and Afghanistan.
- A section of the Afghan Army, with support of USSR overthrew the government in 1978, before sending her troops there in December 1979.
- USA assisted the Afghan Muslim guerillas called Mujahedeen (holy warriors).
- In Latin America we had the Cuban Missile Crisis, when Fidel Castro overthrew the 25-year old dictatorship of Fulgencio Batista-bloc.
- By 1960, the relation between Castrol and USA became sour when the former started nationalizing US oil refineries and sugar industries on eh Island.
- **∋** US then imposed embargo on Cuba.
- ∋ 1962, she was expelled from American states organization.
- Russia then started a nuclear programme in Cuba in May 1962.
- In Africa, emperor Haile-Selassie was overthrown by Mengisto Heile-Mariam in 1974
- → Mariam was supported by USSR
- ∋ Angola became independent on 11 / 11 / 1975 with support from USSR
- When disagreement started over which party was to lead, USA supported the rebels under Jonas Savimbi while Cuba supported the government.

### Why Americans were defeated in Vietnam War during the cold war era.

1. The Vietcong applied guerilla tactics.

- 2. They were not familiar with the terrain.
- The local people in the South fought alongside the Vietcong, as they had been promised land reforms after the war.
- 4. The Vietcong received military assistance from the North, China and USSR
- 5. South Vietnamese hated US soldiers as they were foreigners.
- 6. Public opinion in the US was against the war due to the costs involved

#### Easing of the war

- USSR under Nikita Khrushchev who took over after Stalin's death in 1953 was more flexible.
- 2. Negotiations between the super powers to reduce arms e.g. SALT-1972, START 1991.
- 3. Liberal policies introduced by Gorbachev, in which he opened up to the West.
- Fall of communist rule in Eastern Europe and ushering in of the Western democracies.
- 5. Role played by Ronald Reagan of USA by encouraging peace talks with Russia.
- 6. Support of Russia for the Gulf war of 1991.
- 7. Richard Nixon made a friendly move with USSR by visiting Beijing China and Moscow- Russia in 1972.
- 8. The dissolution of the Warsaw Pact.
- 9. Unification of Germany in 1991.

#### Effects of cold war

- It undermined international peace and security
- 2. Hostility, suspicion and mistrust developed among nations
- 3. It led to the development of science and

- technology
- 4. A series of actual wars took place eg in Korea, Angola and Vietnam.
- 5. It led to the formation of military and economic alliances e.g. NATO -1949, COMECON -1949 etc.
- It led to spread of capitalism and communism to different parts of the world.
- 7. Formation of Afro-Asian bloc that adopted the Non-aligned movement.
- 8. It led to coups and counter coups in 3<sup>rd</sup> world countries leading to the rise of dictators like Sesse Seko Mobutu.
- Out of fear of being dominated by the other, these powers established military bases in different parts of the world.
- It led to economic stagnation due to military spending in manufacturing weapons, and spying activities.

#### **CO-OPERATION IN AFRICA**

- ∋ It was because of colonialism of the Africans by foreigners that triggered the need for Co-operation.
- ⇒ This is seen in Pan-Africanism, organization of African Unity (OAU-AU), E.A.C., ECOWAS, COMESA etc.

#### Pan-Africanism

- This was a movement that started outside Africa and aimed at uniting all peoples of African descent all over the world.
- ∋ Its origin is closely associated with the Trans-Atlantic Slave Trade, through which Africans were taken outside the continent as slaves.

#### It aims

- To unite peoples of African origin to free themselves from social discrimination & colonial rule.
- 2. To challenge ideological supremacy of the Whites.
- 3. To improve African conditions in the Diaspora and Africa.
- 4. To restore dignity of black people
- 5. To create a forum to channel African grievances.
- 6. To fight neo-colonialism in Africa.
- 7. To secure independence for all African states

#### Factors for its rise.

- Slave trade and slavery which made the Africans to suffer seriously.
- 2. Colonialism in Africa where Africans were subjected to many ills e.g. forced labour.
- 3. Racism in the New World also promoted Pan-Africanism
- 4. European imperialism in the late 19<sup>th</sup> Century.
- Reaction by educated Blacks in the Americas against racist claims by Europeans that Africans were destined to slavery.

#### Its development

Some of the leading Pan-Africanists included: Marcus Moziah Garvey,W.E.B. Du Bois, Booker T. Washington, and George Padmore (non-Africans) Dr. Kwame Nkrumah, Leopold Sengho Sedar, J.E.K. Aggrey, Haile Selassie, Jomo Kenyatta, Julius Nyerere, Kamuzu Banda, Dr Namdi Azikiwe, Blaise Diagne (Africans)

Marcus Garvey -1887-1940 -Jamaica (West Indies)

- He had experienced suffering as a young boy because he was black, which made him be despised as a domestic servant and plantation labour.
- o 1916, he went to United States of America, where he formed the Universal Negro Improvement Association (UNIA).

#### **UNIA'S Aims**

- Assist and uplift the civilization of African communities.
- 2. Create a uniform and united African people.
- 3. Establish a central nation for black race
- 4. Establish academics for African children.
- 5. Promote African cultures.
- 6. He also founded the African Orthodox Church
- 7. He advocated for 'return to Africa' policy
- 8. Mobilized funds for African business e.g. establishing Starline shipping company.
- He was then convicted for fraud and imprisoned for 5 years, but released after 2 years.
- 10. He was then repatriated to Jamaica where he died in 1940, leaving behind some of his slogans like 'black is beautiful'.

### Booker T. Washington- 1856-1915-Southern USA

- 1. He has a degree in agriculture
- 2. He started the Tuskegee Institute in Alabama, where he trained blacks in industrial and agricultural skills.
- 3. Founded the National Negro Business League (NNBL) which taught virtues of business development to the blacks in United States of America.
- 4. He supported African education.

#### William Edward Burghardt-Maussachussets.

#### (W.E.B.Du Bois -1868-1963)

- He Was a professor in History, economics and sociology and was also a journalist
- 2. In 1905, he established Niagara Movement to protect against racial discrimination
- He advocated for higher education for capable blacks, whom he called "talented tenth"
- 4. In 1900, he jointly with others, formed National Association for the Advancement of coloured peoples (NAACP).
- 5. He organized Pan-African congresses.
- 6. In 1961, he went to Ghana.

#### Pan-African Conferences -1900-1945

The meetings/conferences/congresses were organized by the African Association formed in London by black leaders.

#### 1<sup>st</sup> Congress -1900

- It was held at London
- It was mainly organized by Sylvester Williams, lawyer from Trinidad.

#### It objectives

- Untie all people of African origin in the world.
- 2. End European colonization and exploitation of Africans.
- 3. Establish relations between Europeans and Africans.
- 4. Promote African economy through full rights and security

#### Issues discussed

- 1. Living conditions of blacks in the world
- 2. Human rights violation in South Africa.
- 3. Racial discrimination against Africans in the world.

#### 2<sup>nd</sup> congress -1919.

Organized by Du Bois.

#### **Objectives**

- African American troops stationed in France during the World War 1 were to be investigated.
- 2. To represent the interests of the blacks at the impending peace conference after the world war 1

#### **Resolutions** passed

- There was use of international laws to protect Africans.
- 2. African land be owned by Africans.
- 3. Exploitation of Africans be stopped.
- 4. Slavery and capital punishment be stopped.
- 5. Africans to enjoy rights to education.

#### 3<sup>rd</sup> Congress-1923

- э Held in London and Lisbon
- ∋ Backed the resolution of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Congress.

#### 4<sup>th</sup> congress -1927

- → Held in New York
- **9** Mainly attended by African Americans.
- ∋ Aimed at uplifting the standards of African Americans.

#### 5<sup>th</sup> Congress -1945

- → Held in Manchester
- 1. Organized by Africans in Africa.
- 2. Representatives from outside were absent.
- 3. Many African Trade Unions were represented.

#### Its resolution

- Africans should concentrate on winning political power through non-violent means.
- 2. African intellectuals should organize the Africans to fight for political liberation.
- It pleaded for African Unity, change of the boundaries imposed by Europeans.

### Its importance in the History of Pan-Africanism.

- It was attended by African representatives e.g. Jomo Kenyatta
- 2. The African representatives made great contributions and discussed issues related to political and economic status of Africans in Africa.
- 3. The African representatives agreed that they would go back to Africa and lead their countries to independence.
- 4. The congress called for immediate decolonization of Africa and ultimate unification of independent African states.
- 5. It was suggested for the 1<sup>st</sup> time that if the colonial powers were not ready to give independence willingly, force would be used.
- The conference expressed that before long, the peoples of Asia and Africa would have broken the chains of colonialism.
- The conference made demand for universal suffrage and condemned European capitalism.

The 6<sup>th</sup> one was referred to as the Casablanca group comprising of Ghana, Guinea, Mali and Egypt.

#### Role s of Kwame Nkrumah in Pan-Africanism

- He attended Pan-African Conference in Manchester in 1945.
- 2. He organized/boosted Pan-African Conference in Accra in 1958.
- 3. He inspired African leaders to unite.
- 4. He encouraged the formation of nationalist movements.
- 5. He coordinated plans to decolonize West African states/African states.
- 6. He supported black civil rights movement in the USA
- 7. He condemned the European domination in Africa.

### Why Pan-African movement was not active in Africa before 1945.

- 1. Africans in the movement were few and living outside the continent.
- 2. Colonial harassment as they were opposed to colonialism crippled the effort by the

Pan-Africanists

- 3. Use of divide and rule policy by the colonial governments
- 4. Lack of venue to hold meetings to spread their ideas of Pan-Africanism.
- 5. Lack of means of communication to pass ideas / Machinery.
- 6. Little attention given by the two independent countries.
- 7. Policy of assimilation blinded the

### Africans as they thought they were privileged.

8. Africa had more internal pressing problems to which they paid more attention.

### After 1945, the following ideas helped the spread of Pan-Africanism:

- Increased African Nationalism after World War II and the support by U.S.A, U.N and U.S.S.R in fighting for political independence
- 2. Unity brought by 1945 congress at Manchester in which majority delegates came from Africa after being inspired by others to join the Pan-African movement e.g. Leopold Senghor, Jomo Kenyatta.
- 3. Attainment of political independence of India in 1945, Pakistan in 1948 and Myanmar (Burma) in 1948 thus serving to motivate the African Nationalist
- Reduced role of Afro-Americans such as George Padmore as government of U.S.A tried to contain USSR and her ideology during the cold war.
- 5. Attainment of independence of Ghana in 1957 inspired other African states to fight for liberation rather than for betterment of terms for Africans

#### Achievements of Pan-Africanism

- It promoted the spirit of togetherness among Africans all over the world.
- 2. It gave moral support to the African nationalists during the struggle for independence.
- 3. It provided a forum for Africans to

- discuss common matters.
- 4. It led to the establishment of OAU.

#### Challenges faced by Pan-Africanism

- Some leaders disagreed on strategies of uplifting the welfare of people of African origin.
- 2. Many European groups fought and resisted the Pan-Africanism.
- 3. It lacked majority participation by Africans as most of them were still under colonialism.
- 4. Many Pan-Africanism projects failed due to lack of skills and financial back up
- 5. Illiteracy and ignorance
- 6. After 1960's the movement was restricted to the African continent.
- 7. After independence, divisions arose, e.g. among the Francophone and Anglophone.
- European powers exploited their domination of international media to water down the importance of Pan-Africanism.

Inspite of all these, conferences were held to strengthen the movement.

#### ORGANIZATION OF AFRICAN UNITY (OAU)

- May 1963, foreign ministers of 32 African States met in Addis Ababa-Ethiopia to prepare the agenda for the heads meeting
- → OAU was born during this meeting.

#### Its charter's objectives / Aims

- To promote continental unity among member states.
- 2. To eradicate colonialism of all kinds in Africa.
- To promote Human Rights in African countries in line with the UN charter / Abide by the UN charter.

- 4. To promote social, economic and political cooperation in Africa in order to uplift the living standards of the people.
- 5. To uphold the policy of non-alignment in international affairs.
- 6. To recognize / respect the territorial / sovereignty of member states.
- 7. To promote peaceful settlement of discords among member states.

#### Its principles

- Recognition of the sovereign equality of member states
- 2. Non-interference in internal affairs of member states.
- 3. Respect for sovereign and territorial integrity of member states.
- 4. Peaceful settlement of disputes
- 5. Condemnation of political assassinations.
- 6. Independence for territories under colonialism
- 7. Adhere to non-alignment.

#### Its structure

### 1. Assembly of Heads of state and government

- Coordinated the policies and reviewed the structures of the organization
- ⇒ Resolutions were passed by 2/3 majority vote.

#### 2. Council of ministers

- It discussed urgent and important matters.
- It prepared agenda of meetings of Heads of States and governments.
- It implemented decisions made by meeting of Heads of States and Governments.
- It prepared budget of OAU for approval by Heads of States and Governments.

#### 3. Secretariat

- It was headed by Secretary General elected by the Assembly on 4 year term e.g. It did the paper work.
- 1. Kifle Wodajo Ethiopia 1963-1964.
- 2. Diallo Telli Bonbaker –Guinea 1964-1972
- 3. Nzo Ekangaki-Cameroon -1972-
- 4. Eteki Mboumona –Cameroon 1974 -1978
- 5. Edem Kodjo -Togo 1978-1983
- 6. Peter Ouu- Nigeria 1983-1985
- 7. Ide Oumarou -Niger -1985-1989
- 8. Salim Ahmed Salim –Tanzania 1989-2002
- Departments of the secretariat were political, finance, education, science, culture and social affairs, economic development and cooperation, administration and conference.

### 5. Commission for mediation, conciliation and arbitration

It settled disputes between members.

#### Its specialized agencies

- Liberation committee which coordinated the activities of the organization within Africa.
- Economic & social commission which handled issues related to economic & social development.
- 3. Commission on education, science and culture.
- 4. Defense commission
- 5. Conference of African Trade Ministers

- 6. African Civil Aviation Commission (AFCAC)
- 7. Pan-African News Agency (PANA)
- 8. Supreme Council of sports in Africa.
- 9. Union of African Railways
- 10. Organization of African Trade Union (OATU)
- Union of African National Television & Radio Organization (URTNA)
- 12. Organization of African Universities (AAU)
- 13. Union of African Journalists (AUJ)

#### Its achievements

- 1. It enabled African people to speak with one voice in International meetings.
- 2. It supported liberation movements for African states.
- 3. It solved border disputes.
- 4. It provided funds for activities in Africa through the ADB-African Development Bank, African Investment Bank.
- 5. It provided friendship among member states through conferences.
- 6. It provided material support for refugees in Africa.
- 7. It condemned violation of Human Rights.
- 8. It provided a forum for African Independent States to discuss common issues.
- 9. It promoted economic and technical cooperation in Africa.
- 10. It promoted cultural development and exchange

#### Its challenges

- Political instability in some of the member states.
- 2. Border discords between member states which strains relations.
- 3. Personal differences between African leaders.
- 4. Interference by major powers in African affairs.
- 5. Neo-Colonialism as some members still

- lean on their colonial masters.
- 6. Inadequate finance to run its activities.
- 7. Lack of army to enforce its decisions.
- 8. All-African people and nature of the organization.
- 9. Ideological differences
- 10. Nationalism as some member states gave priority to their national issues.
- 11. Violation of Human Rights by leaders.
- 12. Lack of continuity-one year term to chairmanship.

#### African Union (AU)

- → OAU heads of state met at Sirte, Libya on 9/9/1999, hosted by Muamar Gadaffy of Libya.
- ⇒ This was the 'Sirte Declaration' which called for the establishment of an African Union.
- ∋ Another similar meeting was held at Lome in Togo-2000, before another one in Lusaka-Zambia, 2001.
  - -The AU was then in 2002 at a meeting at Durban -South Africa.

#### Differences between African Union

- The AU challenges the principle of noninterference emphasized by OAU
- The AU is an ambitious agenda of accelerating growth and eradicating poverty unlike OAU.
- 3. AU is a union of African people unlike OAU seen as an organization for African executives.
- 4. AU has an accountability mechanism which involves peer review amongst states unlike OAU
- The AU proposes to establish a peace and security council with a standing African army which was not existent in OAU.

#### Its objectives

- 1. To achieve greater unity and solidarity in Africa.
- 2. To defend independence of African states.
- 3. To promote political, social and economic integration of African.
- 4. To promote and defend African Common positions on issues of interest.
- 5. To Encourage international co-operation.
- 6. To Promote peace, security and stability in the continent.
- 7. To Promote democracy and good governance.
- 8. To Promote and protect human and people's rights
- 9. To Promote necessary conditions for African participation in global economy.
- 10. To Promote sustainable development to integrate the African economy.
- 11. To lift/raise living standards of Africans.
- 12. To coordinate and harmonize policies between the existing and future regional economic communities to achieve the objectives of the union.
- To advance the development of the African continent in Science and Technology.
- 14. To eradicate diseases and promote good health in the continent.

#### Its structure.

#### 1. Assembly

- Heads of states
- 2. Meet every year

#### Roles

- 1. It determines the policies of the union.
- 2. It makes decisions
- 3. It admits new members
- 4. It establishes new organs
- 5. It monitors implementation of decisions

- 6. It adopts the budget of the union.
- 7. It gives directives to executive council to restore peace.
- 8. It hires and fires judges for the court of justice.
- 9. It appoints chairperson, vice and gives them functions.

#### 2. Executive Council

It is made up of Foreign Affairs Ministers

#### Deals with

- 1. Foreign trade
- 2. Energy, industry and mineral resources
- 3. Food, agricultural and animal resources and forestry.
- 4. Water resources and irrigation
- 5. Environment and humanitarian relief.
- 6. Transport and communication
- 7. Insurance
- 8. Education, culture, health and human resources.
- 9. Science and technology
- 10. Nationality, residence and immigration
- 11. Social security

#### 3) Commission

- ∋ It's the secretariat
- It has a chairperson, vice and 8 commissioners and staff.
- **∋** It deals with administrative issues.
- It implements the decisions of the Union.
- ∍ It co-ordinates African Union activities
- It processes applications for membership.
- It initiates proposals to be considered by other organs.

### 4) Permanent Representatives Committee

- ⇒ It consists of the ambassadors to union.
- ∋ It prepares for the executive council

#### 5) Peace and Security Council

- **∍** It comprises of 15 members
- It maintains peace

#### 6) Pan-African Parliament

It ensures civil participation in AU process.

#### 7) Economic, social and cultural council

It gives advice to the Union on cultural matters.

#### 8) Court of justice

It rules or deals with continental legal issues.

#### Financial institutions

It provides funding for projects and programmes through African Central Bank, African Monetary Fund, African development Bank and African Investment Bank.

#### Specialized agencies

- Committee on Rural Economy and Agricultural matters.
- 2. On monetary and financial affairs
- 3. On trade, customs and immigration matters
- 4. On industry, science and technology, energy, natural resources and environment.
- 5. Transport, communication and tourism.
- 6. Health, labor and social affairs
- 7. Education, culture and human resources.

#### Functions of these specialized agencies

- 1. It prepares projects and programmes.
- 2. It ensures supervision, follow-up and

- evaluation of implementation of decision
- It ensures coordination and harmonization of projects and programmes.
- 4. It reports and recommends on the union.
- 5. It carries out functions assigned to them.

### Problems it has encountered since its formation in 2001.

- Political instability/civil wars in many countries makes it difficult to execute some of its programmes.
- 2. Borders disputes between member states creates disunity in the continent.
- 3. Lack of democracy in some countries has contributed to its inability to end human rights abuse/violation.
- 4. Interference of African affairs by the developed countries undermines the union's effort to implement its policies.
- Due to neocolonialism, the member states are more attached to their former colonial masters at the expense of the union.
- Ideological differences between some members states creates divisions within the union, thus making it difficult to reach at an agreement.
- 7. Lack of a standing army renders it ineffective in implementing decisions which call for military intervention.
- 8. National interests are given priority at the expense of the union's interests
- 9. Inadequate funds makes it difficult for the union to fulfill all its obligations.
- 10. Divided loyalty by belonging to other organizations.

#### **EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY**

- ∋ It was made up of Kenya, Tanzania & Uganda
- ∋ It was formed on 06/06/1967.

#### Areas of operation

- East African Railways and Harbors Administration
- 2. East African posts and telecommunications administration
- 3. Agricultural research services
- 4. Medical research services.

#### Its objectives

- 1. To promote trade in the region
- 2. To provide common services in the region
- 3. To facilitate free movement of people in the region
- 4. To provide a forum for discussion of economic and political issues.

#### Its structure

#### 1. East Africa Authority

- It comprised of the 3 heads of state.
- э The 1<sup>st</sup> chairman was Nyerere.
- ∍ It was the Supreme organ of the community.

#### 2. East Africa Legislative Assembly

- ∃ It had 27 members, 3 ministers and 3 assistant ministers, chairman, secretary general and counsel.
- ∋ It enacted laws to govern the community.

#### 3. Secretariat

- ∋ Secretary general was the head.
- ⇒ It did table work.

#### 4. Common wealth council

It dealt with trade issues

#### 5. Common market council

It dealt with trade issues.

#### **Special Councils of East Africa Council**

- Financial council –Delta with financial matters.
- 2. Communications Council –coordinated consultations.

### 3. Economic consultative and planning council

 Delta with planning of partners by consultative means.

#### 4. Research and social councils

**Θ** Coordinated policies of partners.

#### Reasons why it collapsed/Challenges.

- Unequal distribution of services and benefits from the organization by the member states made Tanzania and Uganda envy Kenya's monopoly of the organization.
- Ideological differences among the three member states made them pursue different economic policies.
- 3. Personal differences between leaders like Amin and Nyerere made it difficult for them to call meetings that would promote dialogue and unity.
- 4. The coup that overthrew Obote Milton of Uganda undermined the unity that was desired for the survival of the organization / political instability in Uganda undermined the organization.

- 5. The fear that the Kenyans were benefiting from the community in terms of employment.
- 6. Hostility towards nationals from member states.
- 7. Financial constraints resulting from failure by member states to remit funds to the organization.
- 8. Shortage of funds in managing the Community's resources by member states led to unlawful nationalization of the organization's assets.
- 9. Tanzania's closure of the common border with Kenya halted the community's interests.
- 10. National interests overshadowed the organization's interests.
- 11. Personal ambitions by the leaders.
- 12. Too much power was vested in the hands of the authority ie, heads of the three states.

#### Rebirth of the East Africa Union -2001 (EAC)

⇒ It was reborn on 30/11/1999 by Mkapa, Museveni and Moi.

### Stages to the information of the new East Africa Union

- 30 / 11 / 1993, the 1<sup>st</sup> meeting by the 3 heads-Kampala
- 2. 14 / 3 / 1996-Secretariat was launched –Arusha
- 3. 19 / 11 / 1996- East Africa Business Council was launched -Nairobi
- 4. 28 / 4 / 1997-Agreement (Tripentite) -to avoid double taxation
- 5. 29 / 4 / 1997- East Africa Co-operation Development strategy, East Africa Flag and East Africa Passport were launched.
- 6. 20 / 11 / 1997, Memorandum Of Understanding in defence was agreed.
- 7. 30 / 4 / 1998, Treaty on E.A.C. establishment was drafted.
- 8. 26 / 5 / 98, Donors pledged 16m to fund

- the E.A.C.
- 9. 30 / 5 / 1998, they discussed about the treaty drafted.
- 10. 18 / 11 / 1998, Defence Liaison unit of E.A.C. was launched.
- 11. 24 / 11 / 1998, an agreement to control Lake Victoria Hyacinth was reached.
- 12. 22 / 1 / 1999, completed discussing the draft treaty and ministers signed the MOU on foreign policy coordination
- 13. 27 / 1 / 1999 a Seminar on East Africa Co -operation was held
- 14. 25-26 / 8 / 1999, they discussed the issues of draft treaty.
- 15. 30 / 11 / 1999, the treaty was officially signed.

#### Structure

#### 1. The Summit

- ∋ It is made up of the presidents of the member states.
- → They provide general direction towards the realization of the Community's goals.

#### 2. Council of ministers

⇒ It is the decision making organ.

#### 3. Coordinating committee

It coordinates activities of secretarial committees

#### 4. Sectoral committee

∍ It makes programmes and monitors them.

#### 5. East Africa Court of Justice

э It enforces community's law.

#### 6. East African Legislative Assembly

- a. It provides democratic forum for debate.
- b. It also watches over activities of the community.

#### 7. Secretariat

It is headed by a Secretary General who carries out the following duties:

- 1. It authorizes the expenditure on behalf of the members.
- 2. It takes minutes of the Community's meetings.
- 3. It keeps records of the proceedings.
- 4. It implements decisions adopted by the Community's Summit.
- 5. It prepares agenda for the meetings.

#### Other specialized agencies

- 1. East African Development
- 2. Lake Victoria Fisheries Organization (L.V.F.O)
- 3. Inter-University Council for East Africa (IUCEA) co-ordinates research of higher education.

#### Focus issues of the community

- 1. Liberalization and development of trade
- 2. Investment and industrial development
- 3. Monitory affairs
- 4. Development of regional infrastructure and service
- 5. Development of human resources, science and technology
- 6. Facilitate free movement of persons, labor and services etc.
- 7. Development of agriculture
- 8. Environment management
- 9. Development of tourism
- 10. Improvement of health and cultural activities

- 11. Promote women's welfare
- 12. Political and legal affairs
- 13. Promotion of private sector

#### Challenges of East African Community-2001

- 1. Suspicion amongst states.
- 2. Tanzania still taxes Kenyan goods into the country.
- 3. Smuggling of goods across the border.
- 4. Kenya's fishermen are frequently arrested in Uganda and Tanzania
- 5. Cattle rustling across the borders.
- 6. Membership to other organizations.
- 7. Ideological differences.
- 8. National pride.

#### **Achievements of East Africa Union**

- It has established the East Africa passport which has facilitated movement of East African people.
- 2. It has created a forum for E.A. leaders to discuss issues.
- Transport and communication network has been improved to facilitate movement of people & goods.
- 4. There is a wider market for different types of goods produced by each member state.
- 5. The citizens of the member states buy goods at fair prices due to low tariffs levied on goods.
- 6. There are employment opportunities for people of member states in the establishment of common services.
- 7. Establishment of greater market has created room for enhanced economic development of member states / Spearheaded greater industrial growth.
- 8. The member states are working together to establish the East African Federation in order to apply common laws.

### ECONOMIC COMMUNITY FO WEST AFRICAN STATES (ECOWAS)

→ Was signed in Lagos on 28/5/1975

#### **Objectives**

- To liberalize trade between member states.
- 2. To improve relationship and movement of between member states.
- 3. To improve living standards of members
- 4. To create custom union in the region.
- 5. To promote industrial development among members states.
- 6. To promote cultural interaction among member states.

#### **Structure**

### Authority of Heads of state / Heads of Governments

-It rules over the other organs.

#### 2. Council of ministers

- It comprises 2 ministers from each country
- It is the general manager of the organization.
- It advises the authority and other organs.

#### 3. Executive secretariat

It runs day-to-day activities of the organization

#### 4. Tribunal

It interprets the treaty and settles discords.

#### 5. Specialized agencies / Commission

- Trade, customs, immigration, monetary and payments, industry, agriculture and national resources. social and cultural affairs and defense council.
- 10. Membership to other organizations.
- 11. Ideological differences.

#### **Achievements**

- 1. It has standardized education in the region by use of common exam syllabus. Aims
- 2. It has fostered peace through military wing-ECOMOG.
- 3. It has promoted cultural exchange among its members.
- 4. It has improved regional transport / communication system / links.
- 5. It has improved agriculture through sharing of technological knowhow.
- 6. It facilitated free movement of people in the region.
- 7. It has increased job opportunities in the region.
- 8. It has promoted the spirit of togetherness in the region.
- 9. It has promoted mutual cooperation.
- 10. It has promoted inter-regional trade within regions.

#### Challenges

- 1. Difficult to co-ordinate, since the region covered by ECOWAS is vast.
- 2. Poor transport, communication and infrastructure.
- 3. Division between Francophone and Anglophone.
- 4. Colonial patterns of commercial transactions inherited.
- 5. Political instability in the region.
- 6. Foreign interferences.
- 7. Members violate the organization.
- 8. Suspicion between members.
- 9. Border conflicts.

#### **COMMON MARKET FOR EASTERN AND** SOUTHERN AFRICA (COMESA)-Lusaka in Zambia

- 1. To cooperate in creating a conducive environment for foreign / cross boarder / domestic investment.
- 2. To cooperate in the promotion of peace / security / stability among member states.
- 3. To strengthen relations between COMESA members and the rest of the world / adopt a common position in international fora.
- 4. To cooperate in realizing the objectives of the African economics community.
- 5. To promote a more balanced / harmonious development of its production / marketing structure.
- 6. To promote joint development in all economic fields in order to raise the living standards of the people.

#### **Principles**

- Equality and independence for members
- 2. Solidarity and collective self-reliance
- 3. Inter-state co-operation
- 4. Non-aggression
- 5. Recognition, promotion and protection of human rights
- 6. Accountability, and fair participation in development
- 7. Rule of law
- 8. Promotion of democratic governance
- 9. Maintenance of regional peace and security

#### 10. Peaceful settlement of discords

#### Structure

#### 1. Authority

It comprises the Heads of States and it is the supreme peacemaking organ.

#### 2. Council of ministers

- It monitors and ensures proper functioning of the organization
- It makes recommendations to the authority
- It directs other organs
- ∋ It regulates and takes decisions for the organization
- It requests for advice from count
- It considers and approves budget of secretariat and court
- ⇒ It considers measures to be taken to achieve the objectives of the organization
- ∍ It makes regulations for the secretariat.
- It designates the economically poor areas.

#### 3. Court of Justice

∋ It ensures proper interrelationship and application of the provisions of the treaty.

#### 4. Committee of Governors of Central Bank

- It gives financial and monetary plan
- ⇒ It monitors to ensure proper implementation of programmes and plans
- It requests for intervention of Secretariat General.
- ⇒ It considers reports and recommendations from the technical

- committee on finance.
- ∋ It submits report and recommendations to the council

#### 5. Intergovernmental committee

It is made up of Permanent secretaries

- It develops programmes and action plans
- It monitors to ensure proper function of market and its development
- It oversees implementation of the provisions of the treaty
- ∍ It can request for investigation by the Secretary General
- ∋ It also deals with agriculture, comprehensive information systems, energy, finance and monetary affairs, industry, labor, human resources, social and cultural affairs, legal affairs
- It also handles natural resources and environment, tourism and wildlife, trade and customs -transport and communications.

#### **Functions of these committees**

- It implements the programme and prioritizes them.
- It monitors and reviews implementations
- It also deals with submission of reports and recommendations to intergovernmental committee.

#### 6. Secretariat

- It is headed by Secretary general
- ∋ It submits reports to intergovernmental committee.
- ⇒ It does the table work
- It handles administration of finances

- ⇒ It submits budget to I.C.
- ∋ It ensures continuity of the organization
- ∍ It submits reference to the court
- ⇒ It promotes the adoption of joint positions by members.

#### 7. Consultative committee

- It consists of business community and other stakeholders
- It links the above
- It monitors the necessary provisions of the treaty.
- ∍ It consults and receives reports from other interest groups.
- It participates in technical committee and makes recommendations

#### Specialized agencies / commissions

- Eastern and Southern African Trade and Development Bank (PTA Bank)
- 2. PTA reinsurance company
- 3. COMESA Clearing House
- 4. COMESA Association of Commercial Banks
- 5. COMESA Leather Institute

#### **ACHIEVEMENTS**

- 1. It has liberalized trade
- 2. It has enabled the achievement of cooperation in customs.
- 3. Administration of transport & communication to ease movement of goods has been enhanced.
- 4. An enabling environment is being worked on
- 5. Small scale economic activities and policies have been accomplished.
- Financial activities have been harmonized.
- 7. It has created competitive market for members.
- 8. Industrial production has been improved

- with good market and competitiveness.
- 9. Agricultural production has been improved due to large market.
- 10. It gives members national way of exploiting their natural resources for their welfare as each deals with the product in which it is good.
- 11. It has encouraged good governance, hence reduced internal conflict.
- 12. It has provided employment opportunities

#### Challenges

- Poor transport network has hampered movement of goods.
- 2. The member countries produce similar goods, thus limiting the market.
- 3. Some member countries are belonging to other regional economic blocks, hence not fully committed to COMESA.
- Civil wars in some member states hamper smooth flow of goods due to insecurity hence lowering the volume of trade.
- Boundary conflicts and eventual closure among member states make it difficult for them to cooperate eg Togo and Guinea.
- Some member states prefer trading with their former colonial masters, thus posing stiff competition to products from the COMESA region / Foreign interference.
- 7. Failure of some member states to harmonize tariffs has undermined free flow of goods / services.
- 8. Member states pursue their national interests thereby working against the objectives of COMESA.
- 9. Personality differences between leaders eg Museveni and Al-Bashir
- Quarrels over trading rights within COMESA eg between Egypt and Kenya.
- 11. Natural calamities like drought / floods

leading to massive food shortage / famine

SOCIAL ECONOMICS & POLITICAL DEVELOPMENTS & CHALLENGES IN AFRICA SINCE INDEPENDENCE

#### **DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF CONGO (DRC)**

#### **Democratic Republic of Congo**

She was colonized by Belgium under Leopold II, till 30<sup>th</sup> June 1960 when she gained independence.

#### Political developments.

Immediately, violence broke out in Leopoldville (now Kinshasa)

On 5<sup>th</sup> July 1960, there occurred a mutiny in the army demanding for/against.

- Domination of army & government by Belgium's at expense of Congolese
- 2. Replacement of Belgians by Congolese
- End to discrimination in job allocation & grading.
- 4. Etiene Tshisekedi was elected president in 1992
- → 1961, Patrice Lumumba was assassinated
- ⇒ 1964, UN withdraw from Congo
- ⇒ 1965, Moist Tshombe resigned as head of government and was replaced by Sylvester Kiumba.
- Nov-1965, the army staged a coup against Kiumba & Kasavubu (president)
- **∋** They were led by Mobutu Joseph Desire.
- Army mutiny-1960, Political assassinations eg Patrice Lumumba,

Succession of Kasai and Katanga, Political instigated wars, Military coup by Mobutu.

- → Mobutu then embarked on the following reforms.
- He centralized power by becoming the head of state & government
- He banned all political parties before forming the MPR (Movement of the Popular de la revolution) in 1967 as the only party.
- 3. He hoped to unite Congo with one -party
- 4. He reformed the constitution & reduced the powers of parliament.
- He abolished federal system & local assemblies.
- 6. He reduced the number of administrative regions to 8
- 7. He renamed major towns.

#### **Economic & political problems**

- Assassinations and riots and in 1993, Etiene Tshisekedi was sacked as pm
- 2. He was reinstated in 1994 following riots by his supporters.
- 3. In May 1997, rebels entered Kinshasa, forcing Mobutu to exile.
- Rebel leader Laurent Kabila Desire declared himself leader and renamed the country DRC.
- 5. In Jan 2001, he was assassinated.
- His son took over Joseph Kabila in Dec-2002, in coalition with the opposition parties.

#### **Economic developments**

- Some little achievement has been made in infrastructure instabilities.
- 2. Mobutu nationalized industries by Mobutu to raise revenue.
- 3. Mobutu encouraged foreign investment

- in key sectors of the economy
- 4. In 1971, he enacted a law that placed state finances & expenditure under him. Political
- 5. He introduced programmes geared towards resources exploitation for the country to develop.
- 6. Mobutu launched programmes to mine the country's major minerals instead of borrowing from outside.
- 7. New roads & railways were however developed, thus expanding agriculture.
- 8. He boosted the petroleum resources through energy provision
- 9. Entertainment industry has been boosted as foreign -based musicians repatriate their profit back home.
- 10. Domestic & industrial sectors have been boosted by building of Luga Hydro-electric power station.

#### **Social Developments**

- 1. DRC has rich cultural heritage e.g. language & music
- 2. In 1971, Mobutu introduced a policy of using only traditional names.
- 3. He Improved African literacy level.
- 4. Medical insurance programme was established to improve medication in the rural & urban areas.
- 5. The government allocated funds to promote social activities e.g. sports.

#### How she promoted education for Africans after independence.

- 1. Education facilities were constructed / construction of schools.
- 2. More Africans were encouraged to join schools.
- 3. The curriculum was revised to conform to the needs of the people / provided quality education.
- 4. The government established universities / tertiary institutions.

#### **CHALLENGES IN DRC**

- 1. Political upheavals from ideological differences, tribalism and colonial hangover /Ethnicity
- 2. Succession of Katanga and Kasai regions weakened the country
- 3. The foreigners in Congo turned to former colonialists for support hence undermining Congo's independence
- 4. Lumumba's assassination made the country to almost disintegrate
- 5. Between 1960-1964, the UN and Belgian interfered a lot with the country's internal affairs
- 6. When Mobutu took over there was a shift from democracy to dictatorship e.g. one party system
- 7. Between 1977 to 1978, there was the rebellion and 200 soldiers died (Shaba rebellion)
- 8. Kabila was assassinated in 2001 his successor found it difficult to bring peace in DRC
- 9. Poor relationship with neighbouring countries due to the rebel groups

Political challenges during the reign of Mobutu Sese Seko which led to dictatorship in DRC.

1. Appointments based on loyalty / kinship in administration created disunity in the

- country.
- 2. He banned all opposition political parties and created a one party state which stifled democracy in the country.
- 3. He reformed the constitution and stripped the parliament off its powers, thus creating a totalitarian regime.
- Doctorial regime was introduced by replacing federal system with the central government under his control.
- The opposition to the government created uncertainty/tension in the country, leading to the unrests/harassment of opposition leaders.
- The riots/demonstrations due to the civilians' dissatisfaction with the regime caused political tension/stability in the country.
- 7. Civil wars divided the country along tribal lines compromising national unity in the country.
- 8. Rebellion against the regime backed by external forces led to overthrowing of the government.

#### **Economic**

- Political instability has prevented them from exploiting the economic recourses.
- 2. Over reliance on foreign aid in excessive, hence debts.
- 3. Trade imbalance between Zaire & her partners affect the economy.
- 4. Angola war, as sea route through Benguela because of insecurity.
- 5. Massive printing of notes / Inflation.
- Belgium has led other Western countries to dominate the exploitation of Congolese mineral wealth. Profits are repatriated to Europe and Congolese have not benefited from mining activities of their land.
- 7. Corruption and mismanagement of the country's key sectors.

- 8. Poverty and inadequate capital has hindered the exploitation of resources.
- 9. Lack of clean policy on economic recovery after the colonial exploitation.
- Unemployment / Lack of enough job opportunities.
- 11. Poor transport means Poor transport network
- 12. Civil wars in Angola affected her railway transport services through Benguela.
- 13. 1973, oil crisis in the world affected her economic growth.

### Factors that have undermined the exploitation of minerals in the DRC.

- 2. Civil war in the country.
- 3. Shortage of labour due to displacement of people.
- 4. Smuggling of minerals.
- 5. Political interference by neighbouring states.
- 6. Poor transport network.

#### Social

- 1. Levels of education dropped in 1990's
- 2. Unemployment has made it hard for people to receive medication.
- 3. Shortage of health facilities, thus low living standards.
- 4. Overcrowding, especially in towns.
- 5. Handling refugees has been a problem
- 6. International assistance does not reach he camps in time due to insecurity
- Spread of diseases due to rape & overcrowding in camps.

#### **TANZANIA**

#### Political developments

 1962, Tanzania became a one – party state

- 2. 1964, 22 April Nyerere and Karume signed and agreed that Nyerere be the head of the state and Karume the 2<sup>nd</sup> VP.
- 3. This was a political union.
- 4. 1966, Nyerere launched the Arusha Declaration, making Tanzania a socialist state.

### Reasons for the union between Tanganyika and Zanzibar in 1964.

- Zanzibar wanted protection by a stronger and larger group.
- The Africans in Zanzibar did not like dimination by Arabs, thus revolted against them.
- 3. Economically, Zanzibar majored on cloves and slave trade and following the abolition of slave trade, she looked upon Tanganyika to boost her economy.

#### Content/aims of the Arusha Declaration.

- Self-reliance
- 2. Ujamaa (socialism). Commitment in nation building.
- 3. Avoid discrimination-factors & means of production to left in the hands of the people.
- 4. She adopted the principle of nonalignment.
  - 1972, Abeid Karume was assassinated and succeeded by Abond Jumbe.
  - Afro Shirazi & Tanganyika African national union united and formed the CCM (Chama cha Mapinduzi) in 1977.
  - > 1978-79 Amin invaded Tanzania to annex Karega province.
  - > 1985, Nyerere retired and succeeded by the Hassan Mwinyi of Zanzibar.
  - > 1985, the Warioba was the 1<sup>st</sup> vp & pm
  - 1970's capital was shifted from Da-es -salaam to Dodoma.

> 1995, 1<sup>st</sup> multi-party elections were held with Benjamin Mkapa emerging victorious.

#### **Economic developments**

- 1. Ujamaa policy was ended.
- 2. Nationalization policy was abolished.
- 3. Encouragement of privatization of Agriculture, business and industrial sectors and reduction of government expenditure.
- 4. Markets have been liberalized with limited government control of prices.
- 5. Tanzania currency was also devalued to reduce inflation.
- 6. Disposal of unprofitable government farms.
- 7. Has also enhanced her bilateral and multilateral economic relations with neighbours and the west.
- 8. She has also embraced World Bank and International Monetary Fund aid contributions to attract foreign aid investment.
- Has also improved infrastructure through construction of more roads.
- 10. She has expanded mineral production by opening up of Gold mines and Natural gas Plants.

#### Social developments

- 1. Education was changed to suit the needs of Arusha declaration.
- 2. Emphasized the preservation of

- traditional African values.
- 3. Rapid growth of primary & secondary & university education.
- 4. Several hospitals have been established.
- 5. Cost sharing has been introduced in health services.

### How Nyerere promoted education in Tanzania after independence.

- 1. He established the University of Dar-es-Salaam and Sokoine.
- 2. He made Kiswahili the medium of instruction in Schools.
- 3. He made education to be free and compulsory from primary to university.
- 4. He popularized the Philosophy of "education for self-reliance".
- 5. He introduced adult education.

- 9. Political differences among the East African leaders.
- 10. Adoption of socialism made some donors to pull out.
- 11. The collapse of the East African Community in 1977 affected her.
- 12. Continued links with former colonial masters was seen as neo-colonialism.
- 13. Failure of Ujamaa policy.
- 14. Differences between the mainland and Zanzibar, where the later has always desired to break away from the union.
- 15. Influx of refugees from war-torn neighbouring countries has strained the country's resources.
- 16. University students' demonstration in 1966 due to government attempt to introduce a compulsory National Youth Service.

#### **CHALLENGES**

#### **Political**

- Africanization of political institutions was a blow as it meant decolonization of administration faster than local replacements.
- 1964 there was an army mutiny over delayed African promotions which took place and controlled some major parts.
- 3. Political marriage with Zanzibar & Tanganyika was a problem since they had different ideologies.
- 4. She could not take sides on global issues.
- 5. Hostile neighbours especially Uganda during the time of Amin Dada and Kenya as a result of closure of the common border in 1977.
- 6. Political differences among East, African leaders
- 7. Political assassination e.g. of Karume in 1972
- 8. Pressure to adopt multi-partysm.

#### Economic challenges.

- Production decreased due to nationalization as land was given to Africans.
- 2. Cost sharing was not well received by Tanzanians.
- Collapse of the East African Community denied her large common market for her goods.
- 4. Poor transport and communication network.
- 5. Inadequate resources.
- 6. There was inadequate funds / capital.
- 7. There is high inflation rate.
- 8. There is trade imbalance.
- 9. Food shortage due to prolonged drought and inadequate commitment to farming.
- 10. Increased external debts.
- 11. Costly war with Uganda in 1978-79.

#### How poor transport has undermined

#### economic development in Tanzania.

- It has made transportation of goods / services difficult.
- 2. It has hindered exploitation of resources. 3. Unfavorable climate which affects
- 3. It has slowed down the movement of labour.
- 4. It has increased the cost of transport.

#### Social challenges

- Lack of basic social amenities e.g. health facilities.
- 2. Unemployment.
- 3. High levels of illiteracy.
- 4. Inadequate human resources.
- 5. HIV / AIDs.

### CHALLENGES IN AFRICA SINCE INDEPENDENCE

#### -SOCIAL

- 1. Poverty among the people.
- 2. Low literacy level among the people.
- 3. Poor and inadequate health care affects the labour force.
- 4. Population expansion, thus straining the resources available.
- 5. Conflict with the neighbouring countries especially Uganda.
- 6. High crime rate due to unemployment.
- 7. Terrorism / Insecurity which scares investors.
- 8. Refugee menace, from other warring countries like DRC.
- 9. Environmental pollution from the industries.
- 10. Diseases like HIV / AIDs which clears the strong labour force.

#### **Economic**

- 1. Colonial hangovers as the still celebrate instead of building the nation.
- 2. Slow industrial growth due to inadequate funds.
- Unfavorable climate which affects agricultural production.
- 4. Population pressure which strains the fawn facilities available.
- 5. Poor infrastructure which hinders development.
- 6. Over-reliance on primary exports e.g. coffee, tea, cotton etc.
- 7. Corruption among government officials and other stake holders.
- 8. Poor economic planning by the government.
- Unemployment which affects market and investment.

#### **Political**

- 1. Ideological differences.
- Cold war divided the continent and locked the countries in border conflicts that culminated in to Coups d'états.
- 3. Strained international relation.
- 4. Conflicting interests have been in conflict with global and continental policies.
- Neo-colonialism. The divide and rule policies inherited by leaders of independent states have contributed anarchy.
- Ethnicity. Ethnic groups have contributed to severe inter-ethnic wars that have claimed hundreds of thousands of lives as was in the case in Rwanda, Burundi, Sudan and

#### Nigeria

7. Mal-administration-The leadership in many African states after independence was unprepared and inexperienced in administration hence instability e.g. Angola and Mozambique

## ELECTORAL PROCESS AND FUNCTIONS OF GOVERNMENTS IN OTHER PARTS OF THE WORLD.

#### **Britain**

- Britain has a constitutional monarchy system of government.
- ⇒ The government adheres to the Constitution, though the monarchy is not elected.
- ∍ In 1215, King John signed the Magna Carta (Great Charter) which stated that:
- a). No man's property would be taken without consent.
- b). No person would be imprisoned without fair and legal trial.
- ∋ This marked an important step forward in the development of constitutional monarchy in England.
- ⇒ 17<sup>th</sup> Century, parliament passed the Bill of Rights.
- ⇒ 1689, the parliament passed that the king had to rule under the direction of parliament.
- ⇒ 1832, even the poor were allowed to vote, according to the reform bill which was passed.

#### **Electoral process in Britain**

- → Two main parties are Conservative and Labour parties.
- The other parties include liberal and social democratic parties.
- To the House of Commons, the electoral system is based on the principle of 'one person, one vote'; and age of 18 years and above.
- There are two types of elections:general and by-elections.
- ∋ A candidate is nominated by 10 registered voters of an area.

#### **Voter registration**

- It is organized by the local authorities
- Postal vote is possible for those outside during voting time / period.
- There are 650 constituencies.

#### Election campaigns and voting:

#### Disqualification for contenders

- Clergy men of churches of England, Scotland, Ireland and Roman Catholic Church.
- 2. Holders of certain offices e.g. judges.
- Aliens.
- 4. Members of House of Lords.

Contenders must not necessarily reside from their constituencies so long as they are registered voters.

- 1. He deposits 500 sterling pounds refundable if he gets 5% of the total votes in the constituency.
- 2. P. M. announces the election day, a month before the polling day.
- 3. Each candidate appoints an official agent.
- 4. Each party is allocated a few free

- broadcasts during campaigns on TV stations and money for campaigns.
- 5. The party with more seats wins, and produces the PM.

#### Formation / Structure of the British government.

#### 1). Executive

This is the PM, monarch, ministers and civil servants.

#### a). Prime Minister - Functions

- 1. He/she appoints and dismisses ministers but with consent of monarchy.
- 2. He/she recommends to monarchy, candidates for appointment of senior judicial offices e.g. judges.
- 3. He/she is also charged with presiding over cabinet meetings.
- 4. He/she settles disputes between departments.
- 5. He/she controls the cabinet secretariat and oversees the implementation of cabinet decisions.
- 6. He/she leads House of Commons.
- 7. He/she leads the government and the party that nominates him / her.
- 8. He/she changes laws as he / she has the majority backing in parliament.

#### b). Cabinet-Functions

- 1. He/she initiates, controls and implements political policy.
- 2. He/she makes decisions.
- 3. He/she initiates legislation and controls legislative process.

#### c). Civil Service

#### Principles of civil service

- 1. Traditional autonomy – the minister alone is responsible for the work in his department.
- 2. Civil service impartiality serve whoever minister in the office.
- 3. Ministers make policies and civil servants implement them.
- 4. Traditional assumption that it is not the task of the civil service to

initiate change or plan the future development.

#### Role of civil service

- To advise ministers.
- 2. To implement government policies.
- 3. To provide continuity in the government.

#### 2). Legislative

#### **Functions of parliament**

- It makes, amends and abolishes laws.
- 2. All other institutions derive power from parliament.
- 3. It approves government budget.
- 4. Its decisions cannot be overruled by court of law.
- 5. It removes unpopular government from office.

#### **Functions of monarchy**

- 1. He/she approves / assents bills before they become laws.
- 4. He/she co-ordinates government activity. 2. He/she approves all appointments to important state offices.
  - 3. He/she is involved in enacting treaties between the government and other countries in relation to foreign policy.

- 4. He/she summons / Prorogues / dissolves parliament with consultation with the PM.
- 5. He/she gives consent to all cabinet appointments.
- 6. He/she has power to pardon people who have been accused of committing various offences.
- 7. The Monarch appoints Bishops of the Church of England / Create peers ie members of any of the five noble ranks like Barons, Viscounts, Earls, Dukes and Marquins who have the right to sit in the House of Lords.
- 8. He/she advises / counsels the Head of Government.
- He/she confers honors to people who have rendered distinguished / outstanding services to the state e.g. nominating a member to the House.
- 10. He/she is the Commander in- Chief of the Armed Forces.

#### His / her parliamentary duties.

- He/she summons parliament after general elections
- 2. He/she prorogues parliament.
- 3. He/she dissolves parliament.
- 4. He/she plays the role of assenting to bills before they become law.
- He/she is also involved in the nominating members to the House of Commons.

### Privileges enjoyed by Members of Parliament in Britain.

- They enjoy the freedom from harassment e.g. within the parliament premises.
- 2. They also enjoy the freedom of speech.
- 3. They have the protection against arrest for civil offences for a period of about 40 days before and 40 days after a

session of parliament.

**NB**/ The Prime Minister appoints while the Monarch approves the appointments.

### Categories of Members Parliament in Britain.

- 1. Members elected by universal suffrage.
- 2. Members nominated by the Monarch.
- 3. Hereditary peers / Royal family members.
- 4. Senior Statesmen / Life peers.
- 5. Senior leaders of the Church of England.

### How to become a member of parliament in Britain.

- 1. Election to the House of Commons.
- 2. Nomination.
- 3. Virtue of Office.
- 4. Inheritance.
- 5. Appointment due to outstanding performance.

#### House of Lords.

- ∍ It has 1,200 members.
- 800 hereditary, 26 bishops and 21 Lords of appeal.
- No salary, but sitting allowance.

### Ways of becoming a member to House of Lords

- 1. Appointed by monarchy
- 2. Hereditary.
- 3. Virtue of being in position/ Office.

#### **Functions of House of Lords**

- 1. It sits as court of appeal for civil cases that are presided over by the Speaker.
- 2. It facilitates House of Lords or House of Commons in law making

- 3. It initiates routine and non-controversial bills to which he House of Commons has no time to address.
- 4. It can hold bills from House of Common long enough for public approval.
- 5. It questions ministers on activities of the government.
- 6. Can accept, amend or reject bills in collaboration with the House of Commons.
- 7. It debates on the general issues of national policies, interests.
- 8. It checks on the powers of the executive.
- 9. It provides continuity from one parliament to another.
- 10. It is a symbol of unity.

#### House of Commons (HC).

- ∋ It is made up of 650 elected members for 5 years.
- **∍** It is led by the PM
- **The Chief officer is the speaker.**

#### **Qualifications**

- Must be a citizen of Britain or the Republic of Ireland or a Commonwealth subject.
- 2. Must be 21 years and above.
- 3. Must be nominated by a political party or an independent candidate.

#### **Functions of House of Common**

- 1. It makes laws
- 2. It controls executive
- 3. It controls finance.
- 4. It calls attention to abuses in society and demands the settlement of public grievances.
- 5. It trains future leaders.

#### **Judiciary**

9 It is independent of the government.

#### How?

- 1. Salaries are not discussed by parliament.
- 2. Judges are appointed on good behavior.
- 3. A judge can only be sacked by a resolution from both houses.

#### **Duties of the Prime Minister.**

- He/she appoints / dismisses ministers with the consent of the Monarch.
- 2. He/she recommends to the monarch the appointment of high ranking officers in the government / award of civil honours.
- 3. He/she chairs cabinet meetings.
- 4. He/she settles disputes between various government ministries / departments.
- 5. He/she is the chief executive as he heads the government.
- 6. He/she oversees the implementation of the cabinet decisions.
- He/she is the Head of the House of Commons.
- 8. With the support of parliament, he/she can change or amend and repeal laws.
- 9. He/she represents the country in international forum / conferences.
- 10. The leader of the party that nominated him / her.
- 11. He/she determines when the elections are to be held.

#### **UNITED STATES OF AMERICA**

- It has a federal government based on 50 states.
- She gained independence from Britain on 4 / 7 / 1776
- Its constitution was drafted in 1787 in Philadelphia by the original 13 states.
- Officials in parliament are elected by the people.

#### **Electoral process**

Voting – elections are at the following levels:-

- 1. House of representatives 2 years term.
- 2. Governors 4 years term.
- 3. Senate 6 years term.

#### Qualifications for candidates

- 1. HR must be 25 years old and a citizen for at least 7 years.
- 2. Senators at least 30 years old, morally upright and a citizen for at least 9 years.
- 3. Presidential candidate a citizen by birth, aged 35 years and above, must have resided

in America for at least 14 years, Should not have been the president for 2 terms, if not

an independent candidate, he / s must be nominated by a registered political party and

must be morally upright.

#### **Elections**

- The two major parties are the republican and democratic parties.
- Parties nominate their presidential candidates, who will later contest at the final level.
- ⇒ They can either use closed primaries (only party members to elect) or open primaries (from either parties to vote).
- ⇒ Presidential elections take place in November during the election year.
- The presidential candidate picks a running mate who is approved by the party.
- ∍ If he wins, this running mate becomes the V.P.
- → The president is elected by the Electoral College (body whose members are chosen from among the states).

#### Features of state governments in the USA.

- They have a Governor who is the administrative head.
- 2. Each state has law courts which handle internal affairs.
- 3. Each state has its social amenities like education, health and public welfare.
- 4. Each state is responsible for its own development.
- 5. Each state has its own capital.
- 6. Each state generates its own revenue.
- 7. Each state has state legislatures to pass state laws.
- 8. Each state has state police to maintain law and order.

#### Functions of the political parties.

- 1. They make electoral politics coherent by acting as agents of each candidate.
- 2. They are the party label as they help the voters to sort out the candidates.
- 3. They provide accountability, thus when party policies fail, the voters can hold its candidates accountable at election time.
- 4. They help to put the desire of the people on the government policy agenda.
- 5. They provide outlet for citizens to express their sentiments about nominees.
- 6. They are agencies of political education.
- 7. They nominate candidates for elections to various political offices.

#### How the US government is organized.

- It is a federal republic consisting of 50 states.
- 2. Each state is a republic with its own government.
- 3. Each state is headed by a governor.
- 4. Each state has its own constitution guiding internal affairs like education.
- 5. The federal government is headed by a

- president elected after 4 years.
- The president is assisted by a Vice President in administering the country and can take over incase the president dies.
- 7. The federal gov't has a bicameral legislature consisting of the Senate and the House of Representatives and together it is called The Congress.
- 8. Each state is represented in the Congress by 2 senators who are elected by popular votes.
- 9. The Congress checks on the powers of the president.
- 10. The Congress makes laws.
- 11. The State Judiciary comprises the Federal Courts and the Supreme Court.
- 12. The Supreme Court is the highest court.
- 13. There is separation of power between the executive, Legislature and the Judiciary.
- 14. The Federal government controls foreign affairs, defense, international trade, taxation, issuing of currency as well as solving disputes between states and citizens of different states.
- 15. The Congress controls gov't revenue and expenditure.
- 16. The Secretaries (Ministers) are appointed by the president and are not members of the Congress. Once appointed, they have to be confirmed by the Congress.

#### Functions of the US Federal government.

- 1. Levying and regulating taxes within USA.
- 2. It declares war and peace, raise and support armed forces.
- 3. It regulates commerce with foreign nations and the federal states of USA.
- 4. It regulates the value of USA currency.
- 5. It handles foreign affairs by formulating foreign policies.
- 6. It solves disputes between the states.

- 7. It admits new states in the Union.
- 8. Enacting and passing new federal laws.
- 9. It establishes federal courts.
- 10. It gives grants to the individual states.
- 11. It establishes federal postal services.
- 12. It establishes federal army or defense forces.
- It controls trade between states and other nations.
- 14. It controls printing and circulation of currency.

#### Functions of state governments

- 1. They establish law court for their internal affairs.
- 2. They provide educational facilities, health etc.
- 3. State police to maintain law and order.
- 4. To generate revenue necessary for discharging its responsibilities.

#### Legislature

- It has the senate and House of Representatives, with equal powers.
- The Senate approves presidential appointments.
- ∍ It can also ratify foreign treaties.
- The House of Commons are elected for 2 years.
- It deals with tax and finance.
- He can also organize for the impeachment of a president.

#### Features of the American constitution.

- 1. It is a written constitution.
- 2. It is interpreted by the Supreme Court.
- 3. It is the supreme law of the land.
- 4. It contains the Bill of Rights which stipulates Rights and Freedoms to be enjoyed by American citizens.
- 5. It spells out the process of amendment of the constitution.
- 6. It provides a bicameral legislature made

- up of the senate and the House of Representatives.
- 7. It provides for the separation of power between the Executive, Legislature and the Judiciary branches of the Federal government.

#### **Functions of the congress**

- It checks the executives arm of government.
- 2. It approves taxation and ensures that the government expenditure if effectively used accounted for.
- 3. It makes laws by discussing bills before the president gives assent.
- 4. It amends laws which have been approved by all the state governments.
- 5. Senate and president give approval for treaties to be signed for harmonious living with other countries / diplomatic ties.
- President and senate appoint senior civil servants.
- 7. It appoints a commission of inquiry to investigate matters of national importance.
- 8. It discusses issues that affect the lives of the citizens.
- 9. It establishes, maintains and controls the US armed forces.
- 10. It admits new members to the USA union.

#### **Executive roles of the president**

- 1. He/she heads of state.
- 2. He/she appoints cabinet ministers and senior civil servants with approval of the congress.
- 3. He/she guides and controls foreign affairs / Chief diplomat.
- 4. He/she is the Commander in-Chief of the armed forces.
- 5. He/she presides over the Senate.

- 6. He/she presides over cabinet meetings.
- 7. He/she appoints Supreme Court Judges including the Chief Justice.
- 8. He/she is the Head of Government.

### How the President's power / conduct is checked and controlled.

 The Congress checks the power of the president by approving all appointments made

by him.

- 2. The Congress can refuse to approve use of government funds for a foreign policy.
- 3. The Congress can impeach the president.
- 4. The Supreme Court can declare a president to have acted unconstitutionally.
- 5. The constitution limits the president to 2 four-year terms in office.
- 6. The mass media can check on the president's action and speech.
- 7. Pressure groups also act on the president's action.
- 8. The Public opinion reflects the wishes of the people and the president has to respect it..
- 9. The President's party is always careful not to lose its majority in congress.

#### Qualifications for Vice President.

- 1. 35 years of age.
- 2. American by birth.
- 3. Be resident for 14 years.

#### **Roles of Civil Service**

- 1. It implements government policies.
- 2. It explains the government policies.
- 3. It maintains government records.
- 4. It collects government revenue.
- 5. It advices politicians on policies.
- 6. It provides continuity between governments.

7. It draws development plans and government budgets.

more freedom accorded to the states.

#### **Judiciary**

- State courts and federal courts from the US Judiciary.
- ∋ In state courts, judges are elected by the people for short terms.
- ∋ Federal courts comprise Supreme Court, circuit courts, court of appeal, district courts, court of claims and court of customs.
- Judges here are appointed by the president – with advice of senate for life.

### Merits of the federal government / advantages

- 1. It enables several different states and nationalities to live together.
- 2. It enables members of different states to come together without losing their identity.
- 3. It enables states to tackle their common problems jointly eg. pollution.
- 4. It ensures security for small states through the joint forces.
- 5. It enables several states work as a political unit.
- 6. It ensures that the interests of small and minority groups are considered.
- 7. It enables member states to benefit from pool of resources.
- 8. It eases trade by removing custom duties and use of common currency.
- 9. It avails a larger market for goods produced in the various states.

#### Disadvantages / demerits

- 1. Temptation to pull out by countries with more economic resources.
- 2. Leaders are forced to be flexible due to

#### **INDIA**

- э She has a federal government.
- She attained independence from Britain in 1947.
- Her constitution was put in operation in 1950.

#### **Electoral process**

- The country is divided into single member districts.
- The member who wins the largest number of votes takes the seat.
- ∋ Some districts are traditionally reserved for the minority groups e.g. lower castes.
- Candidates pay a deposit which is refunded if to gets 1/6 of the votes.
- Elections are organized by the Electoral Commission.
- The parties include: the Indian Congress Party (C.P.), Bharatiya Janata party, Bahujan Jamal party, communist party of India, Communist Party of India (Marxist) and other regional parties.

#### How the government is organized.

- India has a federal system of government.
- 2. She has a written constitution.
- She has three arms of government: executive, legislature and judiciary.
- 4. The legislature has two houses: the Lower and the Upper house.
- 5. The Lower house is the law making body.
- 6. The federal state is headed by the president.
- 7. The government is headed by the prime

- minister.
- 8. Power is shared between state governments and the union / federal government.
- 9. The prime minister chairs the cabinet meetings.
- 10. Each state government is headed by a governor.
- 11. She has a Supreme Court headed by the Chief Justice.
- 12. Each state has a legislative council that makes laws for the state.

#### **Functions of the Indian Government**

#### **Executive**

- ∋ It is headed by the president who is elected for 5 years term.
- The Vice President is elected for 5 years term by the house of people and upper house.
- It also has the Prime Minister and the Council of ministers.

#### Functions of the Indian President.

- He / she dissolves / calls elections of the Lower House of parliament / House of representative.
- 2. The president assents/vetoes bills that have been passed by parliament.
- 3. He is the commander In-chief of the armed forces.
- 4. He/she appoints state governors/attorney general/Supreme Court judges.
- 5. He/she declares a state of emergency when national security is threatened.
- He/she appoints the prime minister on advice of the parliament / calls the leader of the winning party to form the government.
- 7. He/she is a symbol of national unity.
- 8. He/she establishes special tribunals to

- arbitrate inter-state disputes.
- 9. He/she nominates 12 members to the Upper House / Council of States.
- 10. He/she is the leader of the political party that nominates him/her.
- 11. He/she pardons offenders / issues clemency to offenders.
- 12. He/she makes declarations for certain unique territories.

#### Stages of election of the prime minister.

- He/she is nominated by a particular party.
- 2. He/she is elected in a constituency.
- 3. He/she has to be a leader of his party.
- 4. Should the party win the elections, he is assumed to be the automatic prime minister.
- 5. The president has to consent to this.
- 6. The president swears in the prime minister.

#### Conditions for presidency in India.

- He/she should be a citizen of India.
- 2. He/she should be aged 35 years and above.
- 3. He/she should qualify for elections as a member of House of the People.
- 4. He/she should not be a government employee / not hold office of profit within the government.
- 5. He/she should be nominated by a political party.

### When the Vice president may take over the president's office in India.

- 1. When the sitting president dies.
- 2. If the president becomes incapacitated.
- 3. When the president resigns.
- 4. When the president is removed / impeached.

#### Functions of the Prime Minister of India.

- 1. He/she advises the president on the appointment of the cabinet.
- 2. He/she chairs cabinet meetings.
- 3. He/she is the chief spokesperson of the government.
- 4. He/she advises on the appointment of senior officers in the government.
- 5. He/she recommends persons for the awards of civil honours and distinctions.
- 6. With the advice of the president, he/she can dissolve the Lower house.
- 7. He/she is answerable to the parliament on matters of national concern.
- 8. He/she heads the Council of ministers and the government.

#### **Functions of the Cabinet**

- 1. It approves all proposals for legislature enactment of government policy.
- 2. It recommends all major appointments.
- 3. It settles interdepartmental discords.
- 4. It coordinates activities of government.
- 5. It defends government decisions and policies.
- 6. It presents bills to the Lower House of the LegCo.
- 7. It approves the budget.

#### Legislature

- Legislating or making laws for the country.
- To impeach the president and to remove judges of Supreme Court and high court, judges, Chief election commissioner and controller and auditor General.
- 3. It declares and sanctions the establishment of national highways and waterways.
- 4. It is in charge of security, law and order for the Union.

- 5. It can initiate constitutional amendments.
  - It has 2 houses: Lower Chamber / House of the People (Lok Sabha)-545 members and Upper House – 250 members.
  - → The president nominates 12 members to the upper-house for special interests like arts, and other professionals (Council of State-Ragya Sabha).
  - → 1/3 of the members of the Upper House, they are elected for 3 years term; others for 6 years.
  - ∋ In the Lower House, members are elected on basis of single-member constituencies for 5 years term.
  - ∍ The Speaker is elected from among these members.

#### **Judiciary**

- → There is a supreme court of 17 judges and chief judge -appointed by the president.
- The court handles both internal and external matters.

### \*LATEST HIGH SCHOOL NOTES\* \*0705525657\* (Mr Isaboke)

Maths form 1-4

English form 1-4

kiswahili form 1-4

chemistry form 1--4

Biology form 1-4

Physics form 1--4

Agriculture form 1--4

**Business form 1--4** 

Cre form 1--4

History form 1--4

Computer form 1--4

Geography form 1--4

Homescience f1--4

I.R.E studies f1-4

French notes

Setbooks guides

Primary school notes

**KCSE Topicals** 

\*CPA\* tuitioning

Updated \*CPA,CIFA ATD\* KASNEB notes

Updated \*CPS,CICT,ATD\* KASNEB Notes

Updated \*ICT,IT,ACCA,CFA\* notes

Forex trading guidance

\*CCTV\* installation &Networking services

Online services

\*\_All the materials are in soft copy and we'll updated

Text /call or WhatsApp \*0705525657 to get your copy\_\*

\*https://wa.me/254705525657\*